

ELEMENTARY LESSONS
IN
HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR



ELEMENTARY LESSONS
IN
HISTORICAL
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CONTAINING

Accidence and Word-Formation.

BY THE
REV. RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D.,

HONORARY M.A. OXFORD,
PRESIDENT OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY, LONDON,

Author of "Historical Outlines of English Accidence,"
Editor of "Old English Homilies," "Cursor Mundi," &c.

SECOND EDITION.

London:
MACMILLAN AND CO.

1875.

[The Right of Translation and Reproduction is Reserved.]

LONDON

J. CLAY, SON, AND TAILOR, PRINTERS,
BREAD STREET HILL.

P R E F A C E.

THE present treatise has been drawn up at the urgent request of numerous teachers, who asked for an easier and more elementary work than my "Historical Outlines of English Accidence," published some two years ago. I have endeavoured to the best of my ability to produce a short historical grammar that might be advantageously used as an introduction to my larger book.

I have not, however, made a new book by cutting down and compressing the old one. These "Elementary Lessons" constitute an entirely indepen-

dent work, with many peculiarities of arrangement that at once distinguish it from the "Accidence." A reference to the earlier chapters alone will at once show how very different the two books are. The illustrative examples scattered throughout the present work are for the most part new, very few of them having been quoted elsewhere.

I trust that, to those engaged in the higher education of boys and girls, these lessons will prove helpful in promoting a more thorough knowledge of our "mother tongue," the study of which has of late years been put on a better footing, and has acquired a distinct, and by no means an unimportant, place in the curriculum of a liberal education

Syntax is not treated of in this volume, but I hope before long to be able to get out both a small and a large book on this important subject.

My best thanks are due to my kind friend, the Rev. W. W. Skeat, for his assistance in revising the proof-sheets. At his suggestion I have adopted the classification of the periods of the Language on p. 33, and the mnemonics on p. 48

KING'S COLLEGE,
July 1874

CONTRACTIONS.

- Alht. = Alliterative.
 Anat Mel = Anatomy of Melancholy
 C T. = Canterbury Tales.
 Dan = Danish
 De Reg = De Regimine Principum
 C Mundi = Cursor Mundi,
 C = Cotton MS.
 F. = Fairfax MS
 G = Göttingen MS
 T = Trinity MS
 E E = Early English.
 Fr. = French
 Ger = German
 Gest Rom. = Gesta Romanorum.
 Gr = Greek
 Icel = Icelandic
 Kath = St Katherine
 Lat = Latin
 M E. = Middle English.
 N Fr = Norman-French.
 O E = Old English
 O E Misc = O E Miscellany.
 O E Hom = Old English Homilies.
 O Fr. = Old French
 O H Ger = Old High German
 P of C = Pricke of Conscience
 P of Pl = Pastime of Pleasure
 P¹ P² P³ R¹ R² R³ S¹ S² S³

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia	1
Table of Indo-European Languages	3
Relation of English to the Teutonic Group	4
Table of Teutonic Languages	5

CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language	6
Origin of the English Language	6
Early English Literature	7
Early English Literature	7
Early English Literature	8
Early English Literature	10
Latin introduced by Norman French	12
Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language	13
Early English Literature	16
Early English Literature	21
Early English Literature	24
Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign elements	27

CHAPTER III

Early English Dialects	31
Periods of the Language	33

CHAPTER IV.

	PAGE
Sounds and Letters	35
Classification of Consonants	37
Number of Elementary Sounds in the English Alphabet .	39
Imperfections of the English Alphabet	40

CHAPTER V.

Permutation of Sounds	42
Grimm's Law	46

CHAPTER VI.

Etymology	53
Parts of Speech	53

CHAPTER VII.

Nouns	61
Gender	61
Number	70
Case	78
Declension of Old English Nouns	83

CHAPTER VIII.

Adjectives	87
Declension of O. E. Adjectives	89
Comparison	90
Irregular Comparisons	92
Numerals	96

CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns	101
Personal Pronouns	102
Reflexive Pronouns	110
Adjective Pronouns	112

CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
Independent or Absolute Possessives	114
Demonstrative Pronouns	114
Interrogative Pronouns	118
Relative Pronouns	120
Indefinite Pronouns	122

CHAPTER X.

The Verb	129
Voice	130
Mood	131
Verbal Nouns	133
Tense	134
Number	136
Conjugation	136
Strong Verbs	137
Weak Verbs	153
Verbal Inflections	159
Infinitive Mood	164
Participles	166
Anomalous Verbs	167
Auxiliary Verbs	185

CHAPTER XI.

Adverbs	187
Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives	187
Pronominal Adverbs	190
Adverbs formed from Prepositions	193
Compound Adverbs	193

CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions	195
Simple Preposition	195

	PAGE
Compound Prepositions	196
Comparatives	196
Prepositions compounded with Prepositions	196
Prepositions formed from Nouns	197
Prepositions formed from Adjectives	197
Verbal Prepositions	199

CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions	200
Pronominal Conjunctions	200
Verbal Conjunctions	202

CHAPTER XIV.

Interjections	203
-------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word Formation	204
Noun Suffixes from Demonstrative Roots	204
Adjective Suffixes from Demonstrative Roots	208
Noun Suffixes from Predicative Roots	209
Adjective Suffixes from Predicative Roots	212
Adverbial Suffixes	213
Verbal Suffixes	214
Composition	215
Noun-Compounds	215
Adjective-Compounds	216
Verbal-Compounds	217
Composition with Particles of English Origin	217
Inseparable Particles	217
Separable Particles	221
Suffixes of Romance Origin	223
Composition with Romance Particles	236
Composition with Greek Particles	243

APPENDIX	247
--------------------	-----

INDEX	249
-----------------	-----

ELEMENTARY LESSONS
IN
HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER I.

**I.—Relation of English to the Languages of
Europe and Asia.**

**ENGLISH BELONGS TO THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY
OF LANGUAGES.**

1. Most of the nations of Europe, and some in Asia, (India, Persia, Afghanistan,) have sprung from one common stock, and are therefore related to one another, by blood and by language.

2. These nations philologists have called the **Indo-European** or **Aryan** family.

The ancestors of the Aryan race once lived together in the highlands north of the Himâlaya mountains.

A time came, of which history gives us no account, when the old Aryan tribes separated from each other, and left their ancient abode to seek new settlements.

Two great tribes, the old Hindus and the Persians, crossed the *Himālaya* mountains, and found new homes on the banks of the Ganges and Indus, from whence they soon spread over Hindostan, Persia, &c.

The rest of the Aryan tribes, at different times, and at considerable intervals, travelled westward and came into Europe.

3. The first Aryan comers were the **Kelts**, who settled in parts of Germany, Italy, Spain, Gaul, and the British Isles. Their dialects still survive in Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, Ireland, the Isle of Man, and in Armorica or Brittany.

The **Kelts** were driven out of their settlements in Italy, and pushed further westward by the advance of the **Italic** tribes.

About the same time the peninsula of Greece was peopled by the **Hellenic** or **Grecian** tribes.

Next came the **Teutons**, who took up their abode in Germany and Scandinavia. The last Aryan settlement was made by the **Lithuanians** and **Slavonians**.

The **Slavonians** gradually spread themselves over Russia, Bohemia, Poland, &c.

The **Lithuanians** settled on the Baltic coast in Prussia, Livonia, and Lithuania.

4. Of the people living in Europe the **Fins**, **Lapps**, **Esths**, **Basques**, **Hungarians**, and **Turks**, do not belong to the Indo-European family.

5 TABLE OF INDO-EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

I. Hindu	{	1 Sanscrit (dead)
		2 Hindi, Hindustani, Bengali, Maharratti (all descendants from the Sanscrit)
		3 Cingalese (language of Ceylon)
		4 Gypsy dialect.
II. Iranian	{	1 Zend (the old language of Persia)
		2 Persian
III. Keltic	{	1 Bas Breton or Armorican.
		2 Welsh
		3 Erse or Irish
		4 Gaelic or Highland Scotch.
		5 Manx
IV. Italic or Romanic	{	1 Latin (and old Italian Dialects, Oscan and Umbrian)
		2 The Romance dialects which have sprung from Latin.
		(a) Italian
		(b) French
		(c) Spanish and Portuguese
		(d) Roumansch.
V. Hellenic or Grecian	{	1 Ancient Greek, with its various dialects, Attic, Ionic, Doric, &c
		2 Modern Greek
VI. Teutonic	{	1 Low-German — English, Dutch, Flemish
		2. Scandinavian — Icelandic, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian
		3. High-German — Modern German.
VII. Lettic	{	1 Old Prussian (dead).
		2 Lettish
VIII. Slavonic	{	1 Russian
		2. Polish.
		3 Bohemian

II. Relation of English to the Teutonic Group.

ENGLISH IS A TEUTONIC LANGUAGE, AND BELONGS TO THE LOW-GERMAN DIALECTS.

6. The Teutonic group is that with which we are more nearly connected, English being one of its most important members.

There are three great divisions of the Teutonic people, (1) **Low-German**, (2) **Scandinavian**, (3) **High-German**.

The **Low-Germans** formerly lived near the low-lying lands, by the mouths of the rivers Rhine, Weser, and Elbe.

The **Scandinavians**, probably an off-shoot from the **Low-Germans**, settled in Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and at a later period in Iceland.

The **High-Germans** lived inland, in the highlands south of Germany (Bavaria, &c.)

7. The word *Dutch*, now only applied to the people of Holland, formerly denoted all German-speaking people. The Germans still call themselves *Deutsche*, and their language *Deutsch*.

8. The word *Dutch* is an adjective signifying national,¹ and was the name by which the old Teutons called themselves in contradistinction to other people, whose language they were unable to understand. They styled themselves the (intelligible)

¹ Cp. O. H. Ger. *diut*, O. E. *theod* people; O. H. Germ. *diutisc*, O. E. *theodisc* of the people, popular.

people, but called others, as the Romans, and the Kelts in Britan. *Wakch* and *Welsh*

their name from *Slava*, a word of renown.

9. English belongs to the Low-German division of the Teutonic languages. Its nearest relatives are *Dutch* (the language of the court language of Brabant), *Frisian* (between the Scheldt and Jutland and on the islands near the shore), *Plat-Deutsch* (on the Baltic coast), *Gothic* (the language of the Goths in the ancient province of Dacia) is a *dead* language. The Gothic translation of the Gospels by *Wulfila* or *Ulfilas* (in the fourth century) is the oldest monument of Teutonic literature extant. The *old Saxon* is also a dead language; it was once spoken between the Rhine and the Elbe in Munster, Essen, and Cleves.

10. TABLE OF TEUTONIC LANGUAGES.

I. Low-German	{ 1 Gothic (dead). 2 Old Saxon (dead) 3 English and Lowland-Scotch. 4 Frisian 5 Dutch 6 Flemish.
II. Scandinavian	{ 1 Icelandic. 2 Swedish. 3 Danish 4 Norwegian.
III High-German	{ Modern High-German, with its older stages, Middle High-German, and Old High-German.

CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language.

ORIGIN OF THE ENGLISH.

11. The English language was brought into Britain about the middle of the fifth century by Low-German tribes, commonly known as Angles, Saxons, and Jutes (Frisians).

These Teutonic invaders were known to the Britons as *Saxons*, but they called themselves *English* (*Ænglisc*), and their new home *England* (*Ængla-land*, the land of the *Angles*).

The term *Angle* or *Engle* is supposed by some to take its name from the district of *Angeln* in the Duchy of Schleswig.

12. The *Frisians* or Jutes settled in Kent; the *Angles* in the north, east, and central parts of Britain; and the *Saxons* in the south and west parts of the island (in Essex, Sussex, Wessex, &c.)

The Lowlands of Scotland once formed part of the old Northumbrian kingdom, hence *Lowland-Scotch* is an *English dialect*.

Foreign Elements in English.

ENGLISH WAS ORIGINALLY AN INFLECTED AND UNMIXED LANGUAGE, BUT IS NOW AN UNINFLECTED AND COMPOSITE LANGUAGE.

13. The language that was brought into Britain by the Low-German invaders, was an inflected and synthetic language, like its congener Modern German, and its more distant relatives, Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin.

Though modern English has lost most of the older grammatical endings, and has been reduced to an *analytical* language (like Danish, French, and Persian), it still belongs, by virtue of its descent, to the family of inflected languages.

14. The English language brought over by the Angles, Saxons, &c., was an *unmixed* language.

There were no non-Teutonic elements in its vocabulary.

It is now a composite or mixed language, having adopted words from various nations with whom the English people have had dealings at different times

The foreign elements in English may therefore be treated historically.

I.—The Keltic Element in English.

15. The English invaders of Britain displaced the old Keltic inhabitants, and did not largely mix with them; their language was, therefore, but little influenced by the speech of the British tribes. It affected the spoken far more than the written language, for from

the ninth to the twelfth century English literature furnishes but few examples of borrowed Celtic terms. The words of this period are *barrow* (mound), *brock*, *breeches*, *clout*, *crook*, *kiln*, *cradle*, *mattock*, *pool*.

In the literature of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries we find more frequent traces of Celtic terms, of which the following still survive :—*boast*, *boisterous*, *bribe*, *cam* (crooked), *crag*, *dainty*, *darn*, *daub*, *beam*, *glen*, *havoc*, *kiln*, *mop*, *pillow*.

16. The Norman-French contained some few Celtic terms borrowed from the old Gaulish, some of these found their way into English, as : *bag*, *barren*, *bargain*, *barter*, *barrel*, *basin*, *basket*, *bonnet*, *bucket*, *bran*, *butten*, *chemise*, *car*, *cart*, *dagger*, *gravel*, *gown*, *harness*, *marl*, *mitten*, *molley*, *onion*, *pot*, *rogue*, *ribbon*, *varlet*, *vassal*, *wicket*.

17 A few words, the names of Celtic things, are of recent date, as : *bar*, *barrow*, *barren*, *barter*, *barrel*, *basin*, *basket*, *bonnet*, *bucket*, *bran*, *butten*, *chemise*, *car*, *cart*, *dagger*, *gravel*, *gown*, *harness*, *marl*, *mitten*, *molley*, *onion*, *pot*, *rogue*, *ribbon*, *varlet*, *vassal*, *wicket*.

18. The oldest geographical names are of course Celtic, especially names of rivers and of mountains ; as, *Avon*, *Ouse*, *Esk*, *Exe*, *Usk*, *Thames*, *Derwent*, *Dee*, &c., *Pen-y-Gent*, *Helvellyn*, &c., *Aberdeen*, *Kent*, *Dover*, &c.

II.—The Scandinavian Element in English.

19. Towards the end of the eighth century (A.D. 787) the Northmen of Scandinavia (Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Iceland) commonly known as *Danes*, made descents upon the East coasts of England, Scotland, the Hebrides, and Ireland, as well as in other parts of Europe.

In the ninth century they obtained a permanent footing in the North and East parts of England; and in the eleventh century a Danish dynasty was established on the throne for nearly thirty years (A.D. 1016—1042).

The Scandinavians were a Teutonic people and their language very closely resembled the old English speech. It is, therefore, no easy matter to determine the exact number of words introduced by the old Northmen. Many of the borrowed words have taken an English form, so as to be no longer distinguished as pure Scandinavian. The spoken language was affected by the Danes far more than the written language, especially in Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland, Lincoln, and Norfolk, where many Danish words are still to be found. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries only a few Scandinavian words found their way into the written language, such words are, *aren*, are, *by*, a town; *fel*, a hill; *tū*, to.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries they became more common and are easily discernible; many of these still survive, as *blunt*, *bole* (of a tree), *bound* (for a journey), *busk*, *buckle-to* (buskle), *cake*, *call*, *cast*, *curl*, *cat*, *dairy*, *die*, *daze*, *droop*, *fellow*, *flit*, *fro*, *froward*, *gab*, *gait*, *ill*, *irk* (some), *kid*, *kindle*, *loft*, *low* (flame), *neave* (fist), *muck*, *odd*, *puck*, *plough*, *root*, *same*, *scold*, *sly*, *shy*, *tarn* (lake), *ugly* (E. E. *ugge*, to fear), *weak*, *gar* (to cause, make), *greet* (to weep), are used by Spenser.

20 Very many Norse words once very common in old Northern writers have gone out of use, or have become provincial, as, *at*, to (before infinitives) *beck* (stream), *erre* (scar), *last* (fault), *lut*, (train), *layte* (to seek), *mun* (must, shall), *trine* (to go), *tyne* (to lose), *tymsel* (loss), *thorp* or *thorp* (town), &c

21. Many names of places ending in *by* (town), *feld* (field) *Eyk* (eye), *feld* (field), *feld* (field), indicate Danish settlements, *feld* is the Scandinavian form of *field*, *feld* is the Scandinavian form of *feld*.

22. The Danish invasions did much to unsettle the inflexions in the North of England. Before the Norman-French conquest we find the *n* of the infinitive falling off, and the verb in the third person singular present indicative ending in *as* instead of *eth*. The use of the plural suffix in *as* was frequently extended to nouns that originally formed the plural by the suffix *a* or *u*. The dialects of the North and North-East of England in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are almost as flexionless as modern English. These parts of England were the last to come under the influence of Norman-French.

III.—The Latin Element in English.

I. LATIN OF THE FIRST PERIOD: connected with the Roman Invasion.

23. The Roman occupation of Britain for nearly four centuries (from A.D. 43 to A.D. 426) left its traces in the few names of places, as *Chester*, *Gloucester*, *Dorchester*, *Exeter*, *Stratton*, *Lincoln*, &c.

Fortified towns and great roads became familiar objects to the old English settlers in Britain; so *castra*, a camp, and *strata*, a street, soon passed into English under the forms *caestre* = *chester*, and *stræt* = *street*. Probably *portus*, a port, as in *Portsmouth*, was known to the oldest English. Cp. O.E. *port-gerefa*, a *port-reeve*.

2. LATIN OF THE SECOND PERIOD: St. Augustine's Mission.

24. The introduction of Christianity about the end of the sixth century (A.D. 596) brought England into connection with Rome, and during the four following centuries a large number of Latin words became familiar to educated Englishmen.

The words introduced into the language during this period were, for the most part, connected with the Church, its services and observances, as : *ancor*, hermit (anchoreta); *postol*, apostle (apostolus); *biscop*, bishop (episcopus); *calc*, chalice (calix); *clustor*, cloister (claustrum), *diacon*, deacon (diaconus), *clerc*, clerk (clericus); *munc*, monk (monachus); *masse*, mass (missa); *mynster*, minster (monasterium), *preost*, priest (presbyter), *sanct*, saint (sanctus); *carited*, charity (caritas); *almesse*, alms (eleemosyna); *predician*, preach (prædicare); *regol*, rule (regula).

A few foreign articles now came in for the first time, and retained their Latin names.

(1) A few articles of *food, clothing, ornaments, &c.* : *butor*, butter (bütŷrum); *che*, cheese (caseus), *pall*, pall (pallium); *tunic*, tunic (tunica).

(2) *Trees and Plants* : *cedar*, cedar (cedrus); *fig*, fig (ficus); *peru*, pear (pirum); *persuc*, peach (persicum); *lactuce*, lettuce (lactuca), *lilie*, lily (lilium); *pipor*, pepper (piper); *pea*, pease (pisum), &c.

(3) *Animals* : *mere-groat*, pearl (margarita); *camel*, camel (camelus); *culufre*, dove (columba), *leo*, lion (leo); *pard*, leopard (pardus); *ostre*, oyster (ostrea); *pauva*, peacock (pavo), *trâht*, trout (trutta); *turtile*, turtle (turtur), *olfeud* (camel), a corruption of *elephant*.

(4) *Weights*: *pund*, pound (pondus), *ynce*, inch, ounce (uncia), &c.

(5) *Miscellaneous*: *candel*, candle (candēla), *disc*, disk (discus), *culter*, coulter (culter), *marman* -(stan), marble stone (marmor); *tafl*, table (tabula), *mynet*, mint (moneta).

13. LATIN OF THE THIRD PERIOD: introduced by the Norman Conquest.

25. The Norman Conquest in 1066 was a remarkable event in the history of the English nation, and affected the language more than anything that happened either before or after it.

When the Normans made themselves masters of England they attempted to spread their language throughout the island. French became the language of the court and of the nobility: of the clergy and of literature: of the universities and schools: of the courts of law, and of Parliament: but French did not succeed in displacing English, for the great body of the common people refused to give up their mother-tongue, and from time to time there arose men who wrote in English for the benefit of those who knew nothing of French or Latin. After a while the Normans, being in the minority, mingled with the English and became one people. While the coalescence was taking place (in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries), there was a mingling of the two languages, and many French words found their way first into the spoken and afterwards into the written language.

After the distinction between Normans and English died out, Norman-French degenerated into a mere

provincial dialect and at last ceased to be spoken in England.

In 1349 boys no longer learnt their Latin through the medium of French.

In 1362 (the 36th of Edward III.) English superseded French and Latin in the courts of law.

Certain political circumstances helped to bring about these changes, such as the loss of Normandy in John's reign, and the French wars of Edward III. (A.D. 1339).

Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language.

26. The Norman-French was essentially a Latin language, and the Norman Conquest added to English another very considerable Latin element

The introduction of French words was the work of some time, and went on gradually from the eleventh to the fourteenth century.

They came into the written language at first sparingly. In the Saxon Chronicle from 1086 to 1154, we find less than twenty Norman-French words — *court, dub* (1086), *peace* (1135), *treasurie, prison, justice, rent, privilege, miracle* (1137), *standard, empress, countess, tower* (1140), *procession* (1154). A little before A.D. 1200 we find, *baron, chemise, custom, pumance, palfrey, sot, jugler, master, mercy, manner, poor, riches, robbery, sacrament, charity, easy, font, sermon, passion, wait, saint, poverty, large, mantle, pride, service, spouse, taper, turn, &c.*

Even at this early period we find hybrids: *spus-had* = marriage; *crisme-cloth, mausterling* = prince;

disposed, despoused = married; *almesful* = charitable, &c.

In Layamon's Brut (A.D. 1205), we find in the two versions less than one hundred words of French origin, among which we note especially, *admiral, abbey, annoy, attire, astronomy, camp, change, chattel, chieftain, close, country, cope, crown, cross, cry, delay, duke, escape, espy, false, fail, fool, grace, guise, guile, hardly, honour, hostage, hurt, ire, cable, legion, messenger, machine, male, mile, mountain, nun, nunnery, pilgrim, post, power, to roll, school, scorn, senator, serve, serving, sire, suffer, use,* &c.

27 Numerous French words were introduced into the language during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, by those native writers who for the first time translated religious treatises, poems, and romances, from the French into English. These compensated for the original imperfections of our language in religious, ethical, philosophical, and poetical terms; besides giving us numerous words referring to war, chivalry, and the chase. Towards the middle of the fourteenth century, French influence upon the language was at its height. ✕

28. Chaucer has been wrongfully accused of corrupting the written language of his day, by fresh importation of Romance words. In his translations he doubtless was compelled to employ many new terms for ideas and things, as yet unfamiliar to his countrymen; but his vocabulary is not more deeply tinged

* See the long list of French words in the "Ancient Riwle," "King Alexander" ("Hist Outlines," pp. 339-344).

with French words than other writers of the fourteenth century. He no doubt gave his authority to words already in general use, and rejected others in favour of native terms, and thus did much to fix the native vocabulary, and to stop the increasing inflow of borrowed words. It is said that not more than perhaps one hundred Romance words used by Chaucer in his various works have become obsolete.

"It is a great but very widely spread error to suppose that the influx of French words in the fourteenth century was due alone to poetry and other branches of pure literature. The Law, which now first became organized into a science, introduced many borrowed terms from the nomenclature of Latin and French jurisprudence; the glass-worker, the enameller, the architect, the brass-founder, the Flemish clothier, and the other handicraftsmen, whom Norman tastes and luxury invited, or domestic oppression expelled from the Continent, brought with them the vocabularies of their respective arts, and Mediterranean commerce—which was stimulated by the demand for English wool, then the finest in Europe—imported from the harbours of a sea where the French was the predominant language, both new articles of merchandize and the French designation for them. The sciences too, medicine, physics, geography, alchemy, astrology, all of which became known to England chiefly through French channels, added numerous specific terms to the existing vocabulary; and very many of the words first employed in English writings as a part of the technical phraseology of these various arts and knowledge, soon passed out into the domain of common life, in modified or untechnical senses, and thus became

incorporated into the general tongue of society and of books."²

29. But when the English vocabulary was thus increased by this great influx of French terms, many of the native words went out of use. Thus, if we take a thirteenth-century version of the Creed, we find *shenned*, conceived; *spined was*, suffered; *lihte*, descended, *steih*, ascended; *imennesse of haluwen*, communion of saints; *ariste*, resurrection. In a fourteenth-century copy (A D 1340) of the Lord's Prayer we find *yeldinges*, trespasses; *yelderis*, trespassers; *vondinge*, temptation; *vri*, deliver. Wicliffe has *dettis*, *dettour*, *delyvere*.³

Tyndal (1526) has *treaspases*, *treaspas* (verb) for *dettis* and *dettours*.

Many good old English words have gone out since Chaucer's time, having been replaced by Romance and Latin terms.

Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English.

30. No language gives up its grammar and adopts a new system of borrowed inflexions for its nouns, adjectives, and verbs, &c.

It will part with the greater portion of its original vocabulary, and yet leave grammatical forms almost untouched. Norman-French words found an easy

¹ Marsh, "History and Origin of English Language," p. 66.

² Some older versions of the Pater Noster have *gultes* and *gultes*, trespasses; and trespassers; *shilde* (shield) for *fri* (free).

entrance into our language, but the influence of four centuries only served to modify and to diminish English inflexions, not to eradicate them by the substitution of new forms.

The Danish invasion had unsettled the language in many parts of the country, and in the literature of the eleventh century we see a disposition to adopt a less inflexional structure, than in the earlier periods. Nearly every nation of the Teutonic family has, by the loss of inflexions, become almost as uninflexional as our own¹. The tendency of all highly inflected or synthetical languages is to become analytical or non-inflexional, so that, had there been no Norman Conquest, we should have followed the ordinary growth of language, in replacing the older grammatical endings by the use of relational words, as, *prepositions, auxiliaries, &c*

Doubtless the Norman invasion caused this change to take place more rapidly and generally, than it would otherwise have done, but even the slight direct modifications here spoken of are not found much before the fourteenth century.

31. The power of forming new words by derivation from Teutonic roots was to a certain extent checked by the introduction of so large a number of foreign words.

Instead of making a new word by the old and formerly familiar method of attaching a suffix to a living native root, it became far easier to adopt a term ready made.

¹ ² *German and Icelandic* have lost much less than other Teutonic languages.

Cp. O.E. *thanc* (thought); *thanc-ol* (thoughtful); *thancful*, *thancwurth* (grateful); *thancolmod* (prudent); *thancwurthlice* (gratefully), &c.

32. Some Norman-French suffixes replaced English ones.

In the fourteenth century we find the feminine *-eess* taking the place of *-en*, and *-ster*. Cp. *dwelleresse* in Wicliffe for *dwelstere*, *goddesse* (Chaucer) for Old English *gydin*; and the modern forms *bond-age*, *till-age*, *hindr-ance*, *knave-ry*, *wondr-ous*,¹ &c.

33. Some substitutes for inflexion came into use. The preposition *of* replaced the genitive *-s*; the comparison of Adjectives was expressed sometimes by *more* and *most* instead of *-er* and *-est*. Many Romance adjectives were inflected in the plural after the Norman-French method, as *wateres principales*, *capitalles lettres*; we also find *children innocens* (La Tour Laundry, p. 104).

The Old English method of forming a plural adjective was by adding *-an (-en)*, *-e*.

When used substantively, the Romance adjective formed its plural by the addition of *-s*, and the Old English by *-e*. Cp. "He ous tekth to knawe the *great-e* thinges vram the *littl-e*, the *precious-e-s* vram the *vile-s*."² To this method we owe the early forms *gentles*, *familiars*, which became the models for many others, as "our *delicates*" and *wantons*" (Holland's "Phny," p. 603); the *yellowes* = the jaundice

¹ See "Historical Outlines," p. 39.

² He teaches us to know the great things from the little ones, the precious things from the vile ones.

(Hollinshed), "*yonges*" = young ones (L. Andrewe), *calms*, *shallows*, *worthies*, &c.

The use of Auxiliary Verbs (*have*, *shall*, *will*) became very common after the Norman Conquest.

34. The earliest and the greatest change was upon the pronunciation.

All the older vowel endings *-a*, *-o*, *-u*, became *-e* and the terminations *-an*, *-as*, *-ath*, *-on*, *-od*, became *-en*, *-es*, *-eth*, *-en*, *-ed*.

After a time (fourteenth century) the final *e* fell off altogether, or was retained as an orthographical expedient. Cp. O E *nama*, name, *steorra*, M.E. *sterre*, star; O E *sunu*, M.E. *son* = son, &c.

35. This change of final vowels, simple as it was, served to weaken most of the inflexional forms.

It also helped to break down the old distinction of grammatical gender.

Thus the suffix *-a* was a sign of the masculine, and *-e* of the feminine gender; but when *webb-a* (m), *webb-e* (f), a weaver, came to be represented by the same form, *webbe*, then the final *-e*, if retained as a sign of gender, must be limited either to the masculine or feminine. An attempt was made to restrict it to the masculine, as *hunt-e*, a hunter, *spus-e*, a bridegroom; but *webbe*, a female weaver, occurs in "Piers Plowman" We now use *webster*.

We also find it frequently used up to the middle of the fourteenth century, to denote the *agent*. (Cp. the restricted sense of the old fem. *-ster*, see p. 63). We can easily understand how *widruwa* (a widow-er) dropped out of use, leaving *widuwe* (a widow), from

which a new masculine had to be formed; just as in the sixteenth century we find *spouse* (m), and *spousesse* (f) for the twelfth century *spus* (m), and *spuse* (f).

36. After a time a few fresh vowel sounds found their way into the language, as *u*, in *duly*; *oi* in *boil*; the *a* in *fame*; *ei* in *aisle*

37. Guttural sounds were softened down or became mute.

(1) Initial and final *c* (*k*) became *ch*, *tch*, as O E. *cild* = *child*; *godlic* = *godlich* (godly); *stræcan* = *stretch* (stretch); *sc* became *sh*; *sceal* = *shall*; *fisc* = *fish*; *g* became *i* (*y*), *w*, *geledfa* = *leaf* (be-lief); *hand-ge-weorc* = *handy-work*; *fugol* = *fowl*; *dæg* = *day*; *lagu* = *law*.

In some instances *cg* has become *j* (*ge*, *dge*) *cring-an* = to *cringe*; *brycg* (M E. *brigge*) = *bridge*.

(2) *c*, *ch*, *h*, *g*, have disappeared or become mute, *ic* = *ich* = *sh* = *I*, *cniht* (M.E. *knicht*) = *knight*; *heah* = *high*; *dirtig* = *dirty*; &c. Cp. the falling away of *h* in *hlāf* = *loaf*; *hring* = *ring*; *hnecca* = *neck*; *k*, and *g*, before *n*, have become mute: *cneow* = *knee*; *gnagan* = to *gnaw*. Cp. the weakening of *l* before *f* and *k* in *calf*, *walk*, &c.

J (*jet*), *z*, *sh* (*sure*), *zh* (*azure*), were sounds that came into use after the Norman Conquest.

38. A new accentuation was introduced by the Normans. The old English accent like that of other Teutonic nations was upon the root syllable as *un-faith-ful-ly*, *un-be-liev-ing*, but in French there was a slight stress of the voice upon the final syllable.

When French words were first adopted they retained their original accent, thus *raison* and *voyage* became *reason* and *voyáge* before they were accented as *redson* and *vojage*.

In the written poetical language of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find words of pure English origin ending in *-ing*, *-liche*, *-ness*, receiving an accent on the final syllable. Chaucer rhymes *gladnesse* with *distresse*. But an attempt was made even as early as Chaucer's time to make borrowed words conform to the native accentuation, and in the "Canterbury Tales" we find *mortal*, *tempest*, &c. as well as *mortál*, *tempést*, &c.

4. LATIN OF THE FOURTH PERIOD: introduced by the Revival of Learning

39. The large number of French words brought into the language by the Norman invasion, prepared the way for the introduction of fresh Latin words, through the impetus given to learning and literature by the revival of learning in England at the beginning of the sixteenth century.

There are then *two* distinct classes of Latin words in English. (1) Those that have come indirectly from Latin through French. (2) Those that have come directly from the Latin.

Words of the first class have undergone much change in spelling, and their origin is often obscured; those of the second class have suffered but little alteration, and their origin is easily recognised.

Latin.	Words coming from Latin through Norman-French	Words coming directly from the Latin
captivum	captiff	captive
dilatāre	delay	dilate
factum	feat	fact
fragilem	frail	fragile
hospitāle	hotel	hospital
lectionem	lesson	lection
pungentem	poignant	pungent
regālem	royal	regal
securum	sare	secure
separare	sever	separate

40 Under the influence of learning, many words coming indirectly from the Latin have taken a more classical form, as, *assaute*, *dette*, *defaut*, *aventure*, *vitaille*, have been altered to *assault*, *debt*, *default*, *adventure*, *victual*, &c.

41. The influx of Latin and Greek words, by means of learning and education, lasted from the time of Henry VII. to the end of the reign of Charles II. Many Latin words when first introduced into our language altered their termination, as, *splendidous*, *mulierosty*, but others were adopted in their original form, as, *chylus* = chyle, *classis* = class, *precipitum* = precipice; *mumma* = mummy; so too with Greek words, *parallelon* = parallel; *ecstasis* = ecstasy; *epocha* = epoch

As the origin of these loans was well known, we can understand why *compact*, *convict*, &c came into use before *compacted* and *convicted* as passive participles.

42. A great number of classical words found their way into the written language which never passed into general usage, as, *intennervate*, to soften; *deturpated*, deformed (Jeremy Taylor); *ludibundness*, *sanguinolency* (Henry More), &c.

During the reigns of Elizabeth, James, and Charles I. fine writing and speaking were greatly affected, but fortunately many true lovers of their noble mother-tongue raised a cry against the pedantic use of scholastic or *ink-horn* terms as they were then called, and thereby did something to stop the tendency to inundate the language with long and useless words.

Thomas Wilson writing in 1553 says, "Among other lessons this should first be learned, that we never affect any strange ink-horn terms, but to speak as is commonly received, neither seeking to be over fine, nor yet living over careless, using our speech as most men do, and ordering our wits as the fewest have done. Some seek so far for outlandish English, that they forget altogether their mother's language, and I dare swear this, if some of their mothers were alive they were not able to tell what they say, and yet these fine English clerks will say they speak in their mother tongue, if a man should charge them with counterfeiting the king's English." Gill in his *Logonomia Anglica*, published in 1619, thus notices what he calls the "new mange in our speaking and writing." "O harsh lips, I now hear all around me such words as *common, vices, envy, malice*; even *virtue, study, justice, pity, mercy, compassion, profit, commodity, colour, grace, favour, acceptance*. But whither, I pray, in all the world have you banished those words which our forefathers used for these new-fangled ones? Are our

words to be exiled like our citizens? Is the new barbaric invasion to extirpate the English tongue? O ye Englishmen, on you, I say, I call, in whose veins that blood flows, retain, retain, what yet remains of our native speech, and, whatever vestiges of our forefathers are yet to be seen, on these plant your footsteps." Butler (*"Hudibras,"* I. i. 91) speaks of:—

"A Babylonish dialect,
Which learned pedants much affect.
'Twas English cut on Greek or Latin,
Like fustian heretofore on satin."

43. There are a few miscellaneous Romance words that have come into the language chiefly during the Tudor and Stuart periods.

(1) **Spanish terms.**—"During the latter half of the sixteenth century, and the first half of the seventeenth century," the Spanish language "was very widely known in England, indeed far more familiar than it ever since has been.

"The wars in the Low Countries, the probabilities at one period of a match with Spain, the fact that Spanish was almost as serviceable at Brussels, at Milan, at Naples, and for a time at Vienna, not to speak of Lima and Mexico, as at Madrid itself, and scarcely less indispensable, the many points of contact, friendly and hostile, of England with Spain for well nigh a century—all this had conducted to an extended knowledge of Spanish in England. It was popular at Court, Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth were both excellent Spanish scholars. . . . The statesman and scholars of the time were rarely ignorant of the language."—TRENCH.

Many Spanish words end in *-ado*, *-ade*, *-dor*, *-illo*, *-oon* : as *armada*, *barricade*, *bravado*, *desperado*, *eldorado*, *grenade*, *parade*, *tornado*, *corridor*, *matador*, *battle-dor*, *armadillo*, *flotilla*, *peccadillo*, *punctilio* (originally *puntillo*), *vanilla*, *maroon*, *picaroon*, *paragon*. Other familiar terms are *alligator* (*el-lagarto*),^{*} *buffalo*, *cannibal*, *cargo*, *cigar*, *cochineal*, *crusade*, *don*, *duenna*, *filibuster*, *gala*, *garotte*, *indigo*, *mulatto*, *negro*, *parasol*, &c.

(2) **Portuguese.**—*Caste*, *fetishism*, *palaver*, *porcelain*, *moidore*, &c

(3) **Italian.**—In the time of Chaucer, Italian exercised an important influence upon our literature, but scarcely any upon the language. During the reigns of Henry VIII., Mary, and Elizabeth, Italian was as necessary and familiar to every courtier as French is now-a-days. Numerous Italian works were translated into English and Italian peculiarities of speech were copied by English speakers and writers who wished to be thought in fashion. The writings of Surrey, Wyatt, Spenser, and Milton, show an intimate acquaintance with Italian literature. To Italian we are indebted for the following words: *ambuscade*, *balustrade*, *bagatelle*, *balcony*, *bandit*, *bravo*, *broccoli*, *buffoon*, *burlesque*, *bust*, *cadence*, *canto*, *caricature*, *cartoon*, *charlatan*, *citadel*, *concert*, *ditto*, *folio*, *gazette*, *grotto*, *harlequin*, *lava*, *madrigal*, *masquerade*, *motto*, *moustache*, *opera*, *parapet*, *pedant*, *proviso*, *regatta*, *rocket*, *ruffian*, *serenade*, *sketch*, *sovereign*, *stanza*, *stiletto*, *umbrella*, *volcano*, &c.

(4) **Modern French.**—Some few were introduced during the reign of Charles II., as *chagrin*, good

^{*} Lat. *lascerta* = lizard.

graces, grimace, repartee. Many others have come into the language at a still later period: *accoucheur, débüt, dépôt, déjeuner, élite, goût, programme, soirée, pièces, &c.*

44. A few words are borrowed from other Teutonic tongues.—

(1) **Dutch.**—Mostly nautical terms, as *boom, hov, sloop, schooner, skipper, yacht, &c*

(2) **German.**—(i) Names of metals, *cobalt, nickel, zinc, &c.*, (ii) *loafer, iceberg, plunder*, (iii) some few terms are formed after a German model, *father-land, folk-lore, fuller's earth, hand-book, one-sided, pipe-clay, stand-point, &c.*

45. We have naturalized miscellaneous words from various sources.—

(1) **Hindu.**—*Calico, chintz, muslin, loot, jungle, pundit, rice, durbar, &c.*

(2) **Persian.**—*Chess, lilac, orange, sash, turban, &c.*

(3) **Hebrew.**—*Abbot, amen, cabal, cherub, jubilee, pharisaical, sabbath, shubboleth.*

(4) **Arabic.**—*Admiral, alchemy, alcohol, almanac, arsenal, assassin, bazaar, chemistry, cipher, gazelle, giraffe, shrub, syrup, sofa, talisman, tariff, zenith, zero, &c.*

(5) **Turkish.**—*Bey, chouse, scimitar, &c.*

(6) **Malay.**—(Run) *amuck, bamboo, bantam, orang-utang, sago, &c.*

(7) **Chinese.**—*Caddy, nankeen, satin, tea, mandarin, &c*

(8) **American.**—*Canoe, cocoa, hammock, maize, tobacco, tomahawk, wigwam, yam.*

Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign Element.

46 The total number of words in a complete English dictionary would be about 100,000. Numerically the words of Classical origin are about twice as many as pure English terms. The best writers, however, use less than a tenth of the total number; while in ordinary conversation, our vocabulary contains from three to five thousand words.

Recollecting that all our most familiar terms are unborrowed, and that in an ordinary page of English, pure native words are used about five times as often as one foreign term, we can have no difficulty in seeing that the pure English element greatly preponderates over the foreign element

English is a mixed language only in regard to its vocabulary; its grammar is neither borrowed nor mixed. We cannot, therefore, speak of English as a Romance tongue, the construction and meaning of sentences depend upon the use of our grammatical inflexions, and as these are of native origin they serve still more to make the English element the essential and most important part of our language.

47. Pure English elements are :—

(1) Grammatical inflexions.

- a. Plural suffixes of nouns (*-s, -en*) · possessive case (*'s*)
- b Suffixes marking comparison of adjectives (*-er, -est*).

c. Verbal inflexions marking persons (*-st, -th, -s*) ; tense (*-d, -t*) ; endings of participles (*-en, -ing*).

d. Auxiliary words used in place of inflexions :—

i. Words used for comparing of adjectives (*more* and *most*).

ii. Auxiliary verbs (*be, am, have, shall, will*).

(2) **Grammatical words.**

a. All numerals: *one, two, &c.*, except *second^d, million, billion*.

b. Demonstratives: *the, this, that, &c.*

c. Pronouns (personal, relative, &c.): *I, thou, he, who, &c.*

d. Many adverbs of time and place. *here, there, when, &c.*

e. Most prepositions and conjunctions.

f. All nouns forming their plural by vowel change.

g. All adjectives of irregular comparison.

h. All verbs forming their past tense by change of vowel.

i. All anomalous verbs.

j. Causative verbs, formed from intransitive verbs by vowel change.

(3) **i. Numerous suffixes of—**

a. Nouns, *-hood, -ship, -dom, -ness, -ing, -th (-t), &c.*

b. Adjectives, *-ful, -ly,* -en, -ish, -some, &c.*

c. Verbs, *-en, -le, -er.*

ii. Numerous prefixes.

a. *be, for, ful, over, out, &c.*

(4). Most monosyllabic words.

5. The names of most striking objects and agencies in nature as the heavenly bodies, *sky, heaven, sun, moon, stars*. the elements, *fire, earth, water*, and their natural changes, *thunder, lightning, hail, snow, rain, wind, storm, light, heat, darkness, &c*, the seasons, *spring, summer, winter*,¹ the natural divisions of time, *day, night, morning, evening, twilight, sunset, sunrise, &c.*; natural features, external scenery, *height, hill, dale, dell, sea, stream, flood, spring, well, island, land, wood, tree, &c*, words used in earliest childhood, *father, mother, sister, brother, son, daughter, child, home, kin, friend, house, roof, hearth*, parts of the house and household furniture, *room, wall, yard, floor, stair, gate, stool, bed, bench, loom, spoon, cup, kettle, &c*, food and clothing, *cloth, skirt, coat, shoe, hat, &c*; bread, *loaf, milk, cake, ale, wine, beer*; agricultural terms, *plough, rake, harrow, scythe, barn, flail, sheaf, yoke, &c.*, the ordinary terms of traffic, *trade, business, cheap, dear, sell, buy, baker, miller, smith, tanner, bookseller, &c.*, names of trees and plants, *ash, beech, birch, oak, apple, corn, wheat, &c.*; quadrupeds, *deer, sheep, sow, swine, cow, horse, goat, fox, dog, hound, &c.*, birds, *hawk, raven, rook, crow, swan, owl, dove, lark, nightingale, hen, goose, duck, gander, drake, &c.*, fish, *eel, herring, lobster, otter, whale, &c.*; insects, *worm, adder, snake, wasp, fly, gnat, &c.*, parts of the body of man and beast, *flesh, skin, bone, head, limb, hand, &c.*; *horn, snout,*

¹ Autumn is Latin.

tail, claw, hoof, &c., modes of bodily actions and posture, &c., *sit, stand, lean, walk, run, leap, stagger, wake, sleep, nod, rise, talk, &c.*; emotions and passions, &c., *love, hope, fear, tear, weep, laugh, smile, &c.*, common colours, *white, red, brown, &c.*

48. To the Romance and Latin elements belong many words connected with dignitaries, offices, &c. as, *duke, marquis, baron, &c.*, government, *state, people, parliament, treaty, cabinet, minister, army, &c.*; law, *attorney, barrister, damage, felony, &c.*; church, *baptism, ceremony, bible, prayer, preach, lesson, creed, evangelist, &c.*; general and abstract terms, *sense, emotion, passion, colour, &c.* Latin and Greek words are most numerous in scientific and philosophical works.

CHAPTER III.

Early English Dialects.

149 From the eleventh to the middle of the fourteenth century there was no standard or classical language. Various forms of English were spoken in different parts of the country, and every work written during this period illustrates some local variety of the English Speech. There were three leading dialects in the fourteenth century, Southern, Midland, and Northern, each distinguished by certain grammatical peculiarities.

Thus in a work written South of the Thames the verb in the plural of the present indicative ends in *-eth*, as we *habbeth*, we have: a work composed between the Thames and Humber has *-en* instead of *-eth*, as we *habben*.

A Northern writer in the district between the Humber and the Firth of Forth avoids the use of *-eth* and *-en*, and substitutes *-es* for them, or, as is frequently the case, uses an uninflected form, as we *haves*, or we *have*.

Southern.—"We hop^{pe}th for to habbe heuen-riche blisse": "Ye habbeth iherd thet godspel." (Kentish Sermons, A.D. 1240—50.)

Bote the Flemynges that woneth in the west syde of Wales habbeth yleft here straunge speche, and speketh Saxonlych ynow. (Trevisa, A.D. 1387.)

Midland.— Thei knelen alle, and with o vois
The King thei thonken of this chois.
(Gower, A D 1393)

We hauen shep, and we hauen swin (Havelok
the Dane, before 1300)

Northern.—Tharfor maysters soom tyme uses
the wand that has childer to lere under thair hand.
(Hampole, 1340)

Thir twa heuens ay about-rynes
Both day and nyght, and neuer blynnnes
(*Ib*)

MODERN ENGLISH HAS SPRUNG FROM THE EAST- MIDLAND DIALECT

50 The Midland dialect between the Thames and the Humber covered a very large area and had various local varieties

The most important of these was the East-Midland spoken in Lincolnshire, Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex, which had many words and grammatical forms in common with the Northern dialects

As early as the beginning of the thirteenth century it had thrown off most of the older inflexions (preserved by the Southern dialects) and was almost as flexionless as our own. It had an extensive literature and numbered among its writers, Ormin, Robert of Brunne, Wicliffe, Gower and Chaucer. Of all these, Chaucer was the author whose works were most popular and widely diffused. Successive writers, as Hoccleve, Lydgate, and Heywood, took him for their model, and thus his influence did not die out till a great change caused by the revival of learning, and

Other important circumstances in the reigns of the Tudors had brought about a new era in the language and literature

It was Chaucer's influence then that caused the East Midland speech to supersede the other dialects and to assume the position of the standard literary English, from which has come in a direct line with but few flexional changes the language spoken and written by educated Englishmen in all parts of the British Empire

506 Periods of the English Language —

A language is said to be dead when it is no longer spoken. Such a language cannot be altered but a living language is always undergoing some change or other. We do not always take note of it, because it is so very gradual, but when we compare the writings of one period with those of another we have plain evidence of the fact. The farther we go back in this comparison the greater the changes appear, and our language in its earliest period looks very much like a foreign tongue.

In referring to the earlier periods or stages of growth through which our language has passed, we shall distinguish the following divisions —

(1) Old English (A.D. 450—1100).—The language of this period is inflexional. Its vocabulary contains few or no foreign elements. Its poetry is alliterative. To this period belong the writings of *Cædmon*, *Alfred*, and *Ælfric*.

(2) Early English (A.D. 1100—1550).—The language in this period shows many changes both in orthography and grammar. In the first part of this

period the modifications were chiefly orthographical, but they affected the endings of words, and thus led the way to the grammatical changes which took place in the latter part of the thirteenth century.

To the earlier part of this period belong the following works: the *Brut*, written by *Layamon*, the *Ormulum*, by *Ormin*; the *Ancren Riwle*, &c. To the latter half belong the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, the *Owl and Nightingale*, &c.

(3) **Middle English** (A.D. 1250—1485) —Most of the older inflexions of nouns and adjectives have now disappeared. The verbal inflexions are much altered, and many strong verbs have been replaced by weak ones. To the first half of this period belong a *Metrical Chronicle*, and *Lives of Saints*, attributed to Robert of Gloucester, Langtoft's *Metrical Chronicle*, translated by *Robert of Brunne*, and the *Handlyng Synne*, by the same writer, the *Pricke of Conscience*, by Hampole; the *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, by Dan Michel of Northgate, Kent. To the second half belong the works of *Wicliffe*, *William Langley* (or *Langland*), *Gower*, and *Chaucer*, &c.

(4) **Modern English**, from A.D. 1485 to the present time. We might subdivide this period into two parts, calling the language in the earlier period from 1485 to 1600 **Tudor English**.

CHAPTER IV.

Sounds and Letters.

(1) LETTERS.

51 Letters are conventional signs employed to represent sounds. They have grown out of the old pictorial mode of writing, and were at first abbreviated pictures¹.

In the oldest alphabets, a letter does not represent an indivisible sound (consonant *or* vowel), but a syllable (consonant *and* vowel).

After a time the consonants were looked upon as the most important part, and consequently they alone were written, or written in full, while the vowel was either omitted or represented by some less conspicuous symbol.

Such was the character of the old Phœnician alphabet, from which have come the Hebrew, Syriac, Arabic, Sanskrit, and Greek alphabets.

The Latin alphabet, derived from one of the older forms of the Greek, is the parent of our own symbols.

¹ Cp. the names of the letters in Hebrew and Greek, *b* = *beth* (house), *Beta*. *g* = *gimel* (camel), *Gamma*, *d* = *daleth* (door), *Delta*.

The oldest English alphabet consisted of twenty-four¹ letters, all except three being Roman characters: þ, (*thorn* = *th*), and ƿ (*wēn* = *w*), are Runic letters; Ð, ƿ is merely a crossed *d* used instead of the *thorn* j is another form of i, and v of u. w is a doubling of u.

(2) SOUNDS.

52 The spoken alphabet is composed of sounds produced by the articulating organs (or organs of speech), *throat, tongue, palate, lips, &c.*, which serve to modify the breath as it issues from the larynx.

There are two great divisions of Sounds :

Vowels and Consonants.

The **Vowels** are the open sounds of a language. In a vowel sound the emission of the breath is modified by the organs of speech, but is not interrupted or stopped by the actual contact of any of these organs. In the Indo-European speech there were only three original short vowels a, i, u (*far, but, full*), from which have sprung the long vowels ā (*father*), ī (*machine*), ū (*foot*).

The diphthongs are formed in passing from one vowel sound to another: the oldest are ē = a + i (*fite*), o = a + u (*note*). All the varieties of vowel sounds,

¹ See Whitney, "Language and the study of Language," p 465 (1867).

(and they may be almost infinite) are modifications of the three original vowels (a, i, u.)

The **Consonants** are closer sounds than the vowels and less musical. They are produced by the contact of one or other of the organs of speech, whereby the stream of breath is wholly or partially stopped. In the oldest Indo-European speech there were only twelve consonant sounds, *b, p, d, t, g, k, s, m, n, l, r*; and *h* in combination with *b, d, g*, forming the aspirates *bh, dh, gh* (cp. Gr. *φ, θ, χ*).

53. **Classification of Consonants.**—The consonants can be arranged according to the organ by which they are sounded: **Guttural** (*g, k*): **Dental** (*d, t, th*), **Labial** (*b, p, v, f*) &c. They can also be classified according as the breath is wholly or partially stopped in its exit. Stopped sounds are called **mutes or checks**, as *g, k, d, t, b, p*.

In the sounds *m, n, ng*, the breath passes through the nose, and they are called **nasals**.

Partially stopped sounds are termed **Spirants**, as, *h, th, f, s, z*, &c.; *l* and *r* are called **Trills**.

54. In comparing *b* and *p* &c., *d* and *t* &c., we shall find that *b* and *d* are pronounced with less effort than *p* and *t*; hence *b* and *d*, &c. are said to be **soft or flat**, while *p* and *t*, &c. are called **hard or sharp consonants**.

55. TABLE OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

	MUTES			SPIRANTS		
	Flat	Sharp	Nasal	Flat	Sharp	Trills
Gutturals	G	K	NG		Ch (loch) H	-
Palatals	J	Ch			Y (yea)	
Palatal Sibilants				Zh (azure)	Sh (sure)	R
Dental Sibilants				Z (prize, rise)	S (mouse)	L
Dentals	D	T	N	Dh (bathe)	Th (bath)	
Labials	B	P	M	V (witch) W	F (which) Hw	-

56. Ch and j (in English) are compounds : ch = t + sh (sure); j = d' + sh (azure).

Zh and sh are connected with the *palatals*, while z and s are allied to the dental, or lingual series of sounds.

57. From this table of consonants we have omitted

- (1) c; because it can be represented by k before a, o, u, and by s (in *rice*) before e, i, y.
- (2) q; because it is equivalent to kw.
- (3) x, because it is a compound of ks, as in *fox*.

Number of Elementary Sounds in the English spoken Alphabet.

58. In addition to the twenty-four consonants contained in the above table, we have fourteen vowels and five diphthongs, making altogether **forty-three** sounds.

I.—Consonants.

1. <i>b</i>	9 <i>m</i>	17 <i>y</i> .
2. <i>d</i> .	10 <i>n</i> .	18 <i>s</i>
3. <i>f</i> .	11 <i>p</i>	19 <i>ch</i>
4. <i>g</i>	12 <i>r</i>	20 <i>dh</i> (bathe).
5. <i>h</i>	13 <i>s</i>	21 <i>th</i> (bath)
6. <i>j</i>	14 <i>t</i>	22 <i>zh</i> (azure)
7. <i>k</i> .	15 <i>v</i>	23 <i>sh</i> (sure)
8. <i>l</i>	16 <i>w</i>	24. <i>zhw</i> (what)

II.—Vowels.

25 <i>a</i> in gnat.	32. <i>e</i> in meet.
26 <i>a</i> in pair, ware	33 <i>z</i> in knit
27 <i>a</i> same	34. <i>o</i> in not
28 <i>a</i> father	35. <i>o</i> in note
29 <i>a</i> all	36. <i>oo</i> in fool, rude
30 <i>a</i> want	37 <i>oo</i> in wood, put
31. <i>e</i> in met.	38 <i>u</i> in nut.

III.—Diphthongs.

- 39. *z* in high.
- 40. *z* in aye.
- 41. *oi* in boil.
- 42. *ow* in how, bound.
- 43 *ew* in mew.

Imperfections of the English Alphabet.

59. A perfect alphabet must be based upon phonetic principles, and (1) every simple sound must be represented by a distinct symbol; (2) no sound must be represented by more than one sign.

a. The spoken alphabet contains forty-three sounds, but the *written* alphabet has only twenty-six letters or symbols to represent them, therefore in the first point necessary to a perfect system of orthography the English alphabet is found wanting.

The alphabet, as we have seen, is *redundant*, containing three superfluous letters, *c, q, x*, so that it contains only twenty-three letters wherewith to represent forty-three sounds. Again, the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u*, have to represent thirteen sounds (see § 58). It is thus both imperfect and redundant.

The same combinations of letters, too, have distinct sounds, as *ough* in *bough*, *borough*, *cough*, *chough*, *hough*, *hiccough*, *though*, *trough*, *through*, *Sc. sough*; *ea* in *beat*, *bear*, *heard*, &c.

b. In regard to the second point, that no sound should be represented by more than one sign, we again find that the English alphabet fails. The letter *o* (in *note*) may be represented by *oa* (*boat*), *oe* (*toe*), *eo* (*yeoman*), *ou* (*soul*), *ow* (*sow*), *ew* (*sew*), *au* (*haut-boy*), *eau* (*beau*), *owe* (*owf*), *oo* (*floor*), *oh* (*oh!*). The alphabet is therefore *inconsistent* as well as *imperfect*.

Many letters are silent as in *psalm*, *calf*, *could*, *gnat*, *know*, &c.

c. The English alphabet is supplemented by a number of double letters called *digraphs* (*oa, oo, &c.*)

which are as inconsistently employed as the simple characters themselves.

d. Other expedients for remedying the defects of the alphabet are recognised—

(1) The use of a final *e* to denote a long vowel, as *bite*, *note*, &c.* But even with regard to this *e* the orthography is not consistent; it will not allow a word to end in *v*, although the preceding vowel is short, hence an *e* is retained in *live*, *give*, &c.

(2) The doubling of consonants to indicate a short vowel, as *folly*, *hotter*, &c.†

It must be recollected that the letters *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, were originally devised and intended to represent the vowel sounds heard in *father*, *prey*, *pique*, *pole*, *rule*, respectively. In other languages that employ them they still have this value.

During the written period of our language the pronunciation of the vowels has undergone great and extensive changes at different periods, while the spelling has not kept pace with these changes, so that there has arisen a great dislocation of our orthographical system, a divorcement of our written from our spoken alphabet. The introduction of foreign elements into the English language during its written period has brought into use different, and often discordant, systems of orthography (cp. *ch* in *church*, *chivalry*, *Christian*, &c.). In addition to this there are peculiarities arising out of the orthographical usages of the Old-English dialects.

* This came about because the final *e* was kept in writing after the sound was dropped. The *i* in *bite* was long while the word was dissyllabic.

† This arose through the short vowel causing the doubling of the consonant.

CHAPTER V.

Permutation or Interchange of Sounds.

rst

60. The sounds of a language are liable to certain^v changes.

One sound often passes into another.

(1) The vowels are subject to almost infinite variations: thus, short **a**, as in *gnat*, has kept its place in *land*, *band*, &c., but has become **ai** in *name*, and **o** in *man*, *son*, &c. Long **a** has become **au** in *now*, &c. Long **i** (as in *machine*), has become **ɪ** in *bite*, *drive*, &c. Long **u** (as in *pool*) has become **ou**, as in *house* (= *hūs*).

(2) The consonants also pass into one another, and the laws governing these changes may be arranged under the following heads.

i. All sounds uttered^{*} by the same organ are interchangeable, as **b** and **p**, &c., **d** and **t**, &c. To ascertain these, read *across* the table in sect. 55.

ii. Sounds belonging to the same series though^{*} uttered by different organs, are interchangeable. Thus, the spirants **f** and **th**; **th** and **s**; **l** and **r**,

&c., often interchange. Read the columns *downwards* in section 55.

III. Combination of consonants leads to assimilation of the one to the other, as *gospel* = *gos-spel* = O.E. *godspel*, *ditto* = Latin *dictum*.

61. Sounds belonging to the same organ interchange.—The most common change of sounds belonging to the same organ is the passing of a sharp *sho*, its corresponding flat mute, or *vice versa*. Pass from col. 1 to col. 2 in section 55. Sometimes the mutes and the aspirates of the same organ interchange.

Labials.—**B** has become **p** in *gossip* = O.E. *godsib*. **P** has become **b** in *cobweb* = M.E. *copweb*. **F** has become **v** in *vixen* = *fixen* from *fox*, *vat* = *fat*. Cp. *wife* and *wives*. **B** and **p** change to **v**, as in *have* = O.E. *habban*, *knave* = O.E. *cnapa*. **B** and **v** sometimes pass into their corresponding nasal **m**, *summerset* = Fr. *soubresaut*, *malmsey* = O.Fr. *malvoisie*, **M** changes to **b** in *marble*, = Lat. *marmor*.

Dentals.—**D** becomes **t** in *clot* = *clod*, *abbot* = O.E. *abbod*. **T** passes into **d** in *card* = *chart*, Fr. *carte*, Lat. *charta*, *petigree* = T.E. *petigree*. **D** and **t** become **th** in *father*, *mother*, O.E. *fader*, *moder*, *author* = O.E. *autour*, Lat. *auctor*. **Th** has become **d** in *could* = O.E. *cuth*; *bedlam* = *Bethlehem*; it passes into **t** in *nostril* = O.E. *nas-thyrlu* = M.E. *nos-thirles*.

Gutturals.—**K** has become **g** in *wig* = *periwig* = *peruque*; *goblet* = Fr. *gobelet* = M.Lat. *cupellum*.

Palatals.—**Ch** and **j** interchange in *jaw* = *cnaw*, *a-jar* = *a-char*.

62. Sounds belonging to the same series interchange :—

i. The **Spirants** interchange with one another, **F** = **th**. Children often say *fumb* for *thumb*. Cp. *dwarf*, M.E. *dwerth* and *dweg* = O.E. *thweorh*; Russian *Fedor* = *Theodore*. **F** often represents an older **h** or **gh**, as *cough*, *laugh*, &c. **Th** becomes **s** as *loves* = *loveth*. **S** between two vowels often becomes an **r** instead of **z**. Cp. *are* = *ase*, *were* = *wese*. Cp. *forlorn* = *forlosen*; *frore* (Milton) = *frozen*, *varlet* = M. Lat. *vassaletus*.

ii. **Trills**.—**L** and **r** very frequently pass into one another, as *marble* = Fr. *marbre*, Lat. *marmor*; *palfrey* = Fr. *palefroi* = Lat. *paraveredus*, *slander* = Fr. *esclandre* = Lat. *scandalum*, *chapter* = Fr. *chapitre* = Lat. *capitulum*.

iii. **Gutturals and Palatals**.—**K** has become **ch**, as *chin*, *child* = O.E. *cin*, *cild*; *ditch* and *which* = O.E. *dic* and *hwile*. **G** has become **j** in *singe* = O.E. *besengan*, *bridge* = O.E. *brycg*, M.E. *briggæ*. Cp. *joy* = Fr. *jouir*, Lat. *gaudere*.

63. Combination of Consonants causes assimilation. When two consonants come together the first is made like the second, or the second like the first. Cp. *best* = *bes-st* = *bet-st*, *ad-vise* with *at-tend*, and *absorb* with *absorption*. The above examples show us that we cannot keep every combination of sounds. Thus, we may write *cupboard*, but we must pronounce it *cubboard*.

The general law for the combination of consonant

sounds is, that a flat sound must be followed by a flat sound, and a sharp by a sharp sound.

This has an important bearing in English upon (1) the plural of nouns, (2) the possessive case of nouns, (3) the third person singular of verbs, (4) the past tense and passive participle of verbs.

Flat + Flat.

- (1) *Slabs* = *slabs*, *lads* = *lads*; *wives* = *wives*.
- (2) *Dog's* = *dog's*.
- (3) *Wags* = *wags*, *stabs* = *stabs*, *bathes* = *bathes*.
- (4) *Dubbed* = *dubd*, *hugged* = *hugd*.

Sharp + Sharp.

- (1) *Slaps*, *mats*, *reefs*.
- (2) *Cat's*, *bank's*.
- (3) *Reaps*, *fasts*.
- (4) *Weepd* has become *wept*; *lackd* = *lackt*

64. Some sounds are more difficult to pronounce than others. Difficult sounds, as gutturals, often pass into easier sounds as spirants, or into mere breathings; sometimes they disappear altogether. This explains—

- (1) The loss of gutturals at the end of words, as *godly* = O.E. *godlic*, *I* = O.E. *ic*, *day* = O.E. *dæg*, &c.
- (2) The silent letters in *through*, *though*, *high*, &c.
- (3) The *f* sound in *laugh*, *cough*, &c.
- (4) The *y* sound in *year*, O.E. *ger*.
- (5) The *ow* in *tallow*, M.E. *talgh*.

65. The pronunciation of one sound is rendered easier by an additional one. Thus, *m* often becomes *mb* or *mp*, and *n* changes to *nd* or *nt*. Also *s* becomes *st*.

(*B* and *p* come in after *m*, because they are Labials, and *d*, *t* after *n*, because they are Dentals.)

(1) *Slumber* = O.E. *slumerian*, *nimble* = O.E. *nimol*, *number* = Lat. *numerus*, *empty* = O.E. *emtig*, *tempt* = Lat. *tentare*.

(2) *Thunder* = O.E. *thunor*, *hind* = O.E. *hine*, *tender* = Lat. *tener*, *ancient* = O.Fr. *ancien*, *tyrant* = Fr. *tyran*.

(3) *Amongst* = M.E. *amonges*; *whilst* = M.E. *whiles*, &c.

66. Occasionally certain combinations of sounds become difficult, and one of the sounds is dropped. Thus, *-nf*, *-nth*, and *-ns*, have become *-f*, *-th*, and *-s*. Cp. *soft* with Germ. *sanft*; *tooth* with Goth. *tunthus*, Germ. *zahn*, *goose* (O.E. *gōs*) with Germ. *gans*.

GRIMM'S LAW OF PERMUTATION OF CONSONANTS.

67. We have seen that one sound may pass into another, and also that one sound is often preferred to another, especially by children in learning to speak, who say *nuffink* for *nothing*, and *poot* for *foot*, &c.

Dialects are often distinguished by their preference for particular sounds. In the south-west of England *v* and *z* are used instead of *f* and *s*, as *vinger* (finger), *sing* (sing). Languages of the same class exhibit a

similar partiality; thus, where we have **d** and **th** the Germans employ **th** (= **t**) and **d**. Cp. *deer* = Ger. *tier* = O.H Ger. *tier*, *thorn* = Ger. *dorn*.

This substitution of one sound for another extends to all the languages of the Indo-European family, and for the most part follows the rules already laid down for the Permutation of Sounds. (1) All sounds pronounced by the same organ are interchangeable; (2) All sounds of the same series are liable to pass into one another. We can read table in sect 55 across or downwards.

The collection of rules by which we can at once tell what sounds in one language correspond to those of its kindred tongues, is called GRIMM'S LAW.

To render the law as simple as possible, we must bear in mind, (1) the three-fold division of sounds into **Aspirate**, **Flat**, and **Sharp**, according to the following arrangement :—

Names.	Aspirate	Flat or Soft	Sharp or Hard
Labial . .	f	b	p
Dental . .	th	d	t
Guttural . . .	h	g	k (c)

(2) the classification of the Indo-European languages into three groups.

- I. **Classical** (Greek, Latin, Sanskrit, &c)
- II. **Low-German** (English, &c.)
- III. **High-German**.

(1) Grimm's Law shows us that an Aspirate in I. the *Classical* Languages is represented by a flat in II. *Low-German*, and by a sharp in III. *High-German*.

(2) A Flat mute in I corresponds to a sharp in II. and an aspirate in III.

(3) A Sharp consonant in I. corresponds to an aspirate in II. and a flat in III.

I	Classical . .	Aspirate	Flat	Sharp
II.	Low German	Flat	Sharp	Aspirate
III.	High German	Sharp	Aspirate	Flat

ILLUSTRATIONS.

I.

Mnemonic ¹ ASH	Classical	Low German	O.H German.
	Aspirate	Soft or Flat	Hard or Sharp
Labials . . .	<i>frater</i>	<i>brother</i>	<i>bruoeder</i>
Dentals . . .	<i> θυγατηρ</i>	<i>daughter</i>	<i>tohter</i> Ger. <i>tochter</i>
Gutturals . .	<i>χῆρ, anser</i> (= <i>hanser</i>)	<i>goose</i>	<i>hans</i>

¹ If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

II.

Mnemonic ¹ SHA	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Soft <i>or</i> Flat	Hard <i>or</i> Sharp.	Aspirate
Labials .	<i>kadvaßis</i>	<i>hemp</i>	<i>hanaf</i> (Ger <i>hanf</i>)
Dentals .	<i>domare, duo</i>	<i>fame, two</i>	<i>zeman, swei</i> (Ger <i>swei</i>)
Gutturals .	<i>ego, genu</i>	O.E. <i>lc, knee</i>	<i>lā</i> , (Ger. <i>icā</i>)

III.

Mnemonic ¹ HAS	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German
	Hard <i>or</i> Sharp	Aspirate	Soft <i>or</i> Flat.
Labials	<i>pater</i>	<i>fater</i>	<i>vatar</i> (Ger <i>väter</i> .)
Dentals .	<i>tu, tres</i>	<i>thou, three</i>	<i>dū, dū</i> (Ger. <i>drei</i>)
Gutturals	<i>socer octo caput</i>	<i>sweor</i> (= <i>sweoht</i>) <i>eight</i> <i>head</i> (O. E. <i>heafod</i>)	Ger. <i>schwager</i> Ger <i>acāt</i> (irreg.) <i>houpit</i> (Ger. <i>Aaupt</i>)

SUPPRESSION, ADDITION, AND TRANSPOSITION OF
CONSONANT SOUNDS.

68 There are other changes of letters that demand a slight notice. Sounds are (1) dropped, (2) added, (3) transposed.

¹ If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word *ASH*, with its varying forms *SHA* or *HAS*, according to the sound which is to come first.

(1) Dropping of Letters.

Sounds fall away from—

I the beginning of a word (*Aphæresis*).

II the end of a word (*Apocope*)

III the body of a word, causing coalescence of two sounds (*Syncope*).

Accent plays an important part in these changes, unaccented syllables are much weaker than accented ones, and are thus more liable to drop off.

I. APHÆRESIS.

reeve	=	O E ge- <i>re</i> fa
sport	=	E E <i>dis</i> port.
bishop	=	Lat. <i>episcopus</i> .
diamond	=	Fr. <i>diamant</i> , Lat. <i>adamans</i> .

II. APOCOPE.

before	=	O E beforan.
riddle	=	O E <i>ræd</i> -els
riches	=	E E <i>richesse</i> .
maugre	=	Lat. <i>male-gratum</i> .
pork	=	Fr. <i>porc</i> , Lat. <i>porcus</i> .

III. SYNCOPY.

brain	=	O E brægen.
head	=	O E heafod
sexton	=	sacristan.
palsy	=	paralysis.
captif	=	Fr. <i>chétif</i> , Lat. <i>captivus</i> .
cruel	=	Lat. <i>crudelis</i> .
pray	=	Fr. <i>prier</i> , Lat. <i>precari</i> .
church	=	O E cyrce.
mint	=	O E mynet, Lat. <i>moneta</i> .
bounty	=	Fr. <i>bonté</i> , Lat. <i>bonitatem</i> .
clergy	=	Fr. <i>clergé</i> , Lat. <i>clericatus</i> .

(2) Addition of Letters.

Letters may be added to the primitive form

- I. at the beginning of a word (*Prothesis*).
- II. at the end of a word (*Epithesis*).
- III. in the body of a word (*Epenthesis*).

I PROTHESIS.

h, haughty, Lat. *altus*, Fr. *haut*.

n (from the indef. article), *newt* (= an ewt); *nouch* (= an ouch).

s, *scramble*, *scratch*, *squeeze*.

II EPITHESES.

d (after an originally final *e*), *wicked*, *wretched*.

d (after the letter *n*), *sound*. See § 65, p. 46.

h (after *s*), *push*, *nourish*

t (after *n*) See § 65, p. 46.

t (after *s*). See § 65, p. 46.

III EPENTHESIS

b (after *m*). See § 65, p. 46.

p (after *m*). See § 65, p. 46

d (after *l*), *alder* (-*liefest*), M E. *aller*, *s.e.* of *all*.

n (before *t*), *lantern* (Lat. *laterna*).

n (before *g*), *messenger*, *passenger*.

r, *groom*, *hoarse*, *culprit*.

Some letters are merely orthographical blunders, having crept in through a false etymology or analogy.

l in *could* because of *should*, *would*.

h in *lanthorn* from a supposed connection with *horn*; and in *rhyme* from a supposed connection with *rhythm*.

th in farther (because confused with *further*).

s in island (as if derived from *isle*).

w in whole and its derivatives

x in pickaxe (as if connected with *axe*. Cp. M. E. *picoys*).

(3) Metathesis, or Transposition of Letters.

r third for *thrud* (cp. three), nostrils (for *nostrils*),
cp. trouble with *dis-turb*.

ps becomes sp, clasped (= M. E. *clapsed*), wasp
(= O. E. *wæps*).

sc becomes cs or x, hoax (O. E. *husc*), cp. O. E.
ascian, M. E. *axe* for *ask*.

CHAPTER VI.

Etymology.

69. **Etymology** treats of the classification, structure, and history of words; its chief divisions are inflexion and derivation.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

70. Words are arranged in classes, according to the functions they perform in a sentence; these classes are called the Parts of Speech.*

<i>Declinable</i>	{	1. Noun.
		2. Adjective.
		3. Pronoun.
		4. Verb.
<i>Indeclinable</i>	{	5. Adverb.
		6. Preposition.
		7. Conjunction.
		8. Interjection.

INFLEXION AND DERIVATION.

71. The changes which words undergo to mark case, gender, number, comparison, tense, person, &c., are called *inflexions*.

* Speech here means language.

The inflexion of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *declension*; when applied to verbs, it is called *conjugation*.

A *root* or *radical* is that part of a word which cannot be reduced to a simpler or more original form.

According to their origin, roots are either *predicative*, as *horse*, *white*, *wise*, &c., or *demonstrative*, as *he*, *she*, &c.

When the root is modified by a suffix, it is called a *derivative*, thus *wil-ful*, *good-ly*, *tru-th*, are derived respectively from *will*, *good*, and *true*.

Derivates may be native or foreign, as *know-ledge* (English), *sci-ence* (Latin). *Cognates* must be carefully distinguished from *derived* words thus *father* is cognate with the Latin *pater* but *paternal* is derived from *pater*.

Two cognate forms of the same class may exist side by side; *from* (English), and *fro* (Scandinavian)

When a derivative or compound consists of elements belonging to different languages, it is called a hybrid, as *shepherd-ess* (English + Romance), *socialism*, (Latin + Greek)

A word containing two roots is called a *compound*, as *shep-herd*, *fore-man*, *break-fast*, &c.

Prefixes like *be*, *fore*, *with*, &c., are compounded with verbs as *be-speak*, *fore-tell*, *with-stand*, &c.

Compounds like *won't*, *null*, (will not) are called agglutinative compounds. This term might be applied to all compounds, in which the elements are intimately fused, as *none*, *naught*, *fortnight*, *gospel*, &c.

72. Suffixes of inflexion and derivation are called *formative* elements.

All Suffixes are shortened forms of predicative or demonstrative roots.

The first step towards inflexion is *collocation*, just as

good-like has given us *goodly*. See Suffixes of Predicative origin.

The suffix *-i* in Gothic *hund-s*, Lat *cani-s*, which marks the nominative case, is nothing more than a shortened form of the old demonstrative pronoun, *se*, O E *se*, the, that.

Thus *vax* = *voc-s*, the calling, the voice; *rex* = *reg-s*, the ruling one, the king.

The ending *-th* in the third person sing of verbs, as *love-th*, is another form of our demonstrative *the*, *tha-t*.

73. That which was not originally an inflexion often by usage becomes one. Thus the vowel change in the plural of nouns, and in the past tense of strong verbs was not originally an inflexion.

In *feet*, *teeth*, &c., a vowel and a plural suffix (*s*) have been lost from a very early period. See Plurals of Nouns by Vowel change.

The vowel change in *held*, *fell*, &c is due to an original reduplication. See Strong Verbs.

The addition of a syllable causes a change in the root-vowel Cp *nation*, and *national*: *fore*, and *forehead* *break*, and *breakfast*

The loss of an internal letter or the lengthening of a vowel, &c., is also a source of inflexion. Cp *oxen*, *chicken*, &c.

The suffix *-n* in *ox-en* was not originally a sign of the plural, but was added to the root, before the addition of the ordinary plural sign *-s*. After a time the *-s* dropped off leaving the inserted letter *n* to represent the plural inflexion. Cp *caves*, *alms*, *riches*, &c, which are now treated like plurals in *-s*.

The primitive plural of *ox* was not *oxan* but *oxans*. *Chicken* was once used as a plural, but the *-en* is no plural sign. In O.E. the plural of *chicken* = *cycen-u* from *cycen*, a *chicken*; after

a time it became *chicken-e*, or *chucken*. Cp. M.E. *lenden* for *lenden-u* or *lenden-e*, loans.

Such nouns as *song*, *band*, &c. are usually treated as derivatives of the verbs *sing*, *bind*, &c. This is an erroneous view. The O.E. *sang*, *band*, show that these words are the roots of which *sing* and *bind* are weakened forms.

74 The same word has sometimes come to have two different forms, with different functions, as *to* and *too*, *of* and *off* *through* and *thorough*; *one* and *an*, &c.

75. The loss of inflexion is supplied by the use of independent roots. *Case-endings* are replaced by *prepositions*; *verbal endings* by *auxiliary verbs*. Cp. the use of the prepositions *of* and *to* for the old genitive and dative inflexions: *do*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, &c. in the formation of tenses. *more* and *most* instead of *-er* and *-est* in the comparison of adjectives.

The preposition *to* has replaced the infinitive ending *-an* (*-en*) as, *drinc-an* = *to drink*.

76. There is a tendency in all languages to simplify whatever has become complex or obsolete.

Thus the plural suffix *-s* has replaced various others, in *eyes*, *hands*, *sisters*, = O.E. *ēg-an*, *hand-a*, *swustr-u*.

Many strong verbs have conformed to the weak or regular conjugation, as *helped*, O.E. *healp*, &c. See remarks on Gender and Number of Nouns, and on Strong Verbs.

77. To supply losses, the functions of other parts of speech have been extended. The loss of the old

relative pronouns *se, the, &c.* left us the neuter indeclinable *that*, after a time the interrogatives were employed in their stead. See Relative Pronouns.

78. The English language has lost most of the older inflexions, hence its words are no longer formally distinguished (as in Latin, Greek, &c.) as belonging to certain parts of speech without reference to their use in a sentence. The functions of words like *homo, amare, &c.* are limited, but in English almost any part of speech may be used as any other part of speech.*

Thus a verb may become a noun without any change of form.

"They think nothing they shall from it pass,
When all that is shall be turned to *was*."

HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure*.

"For He [God] is wythoute *was*, wythoute *shal be*,"
(For He is without *was*, and without *shall be*)

Ayenbite, p. 104.

Even in Shakespeare the preterite of a verb has been converted into a substantive. a feat not easily performed by any synthetical language, cp.

"No *had*, my Lord!" *King John*, iv. 2, 207.

"This formal fool, your man, speaks nought but proverbs;
and speak men, what they can to him, he'll answer with some
rhyme-rotten sentence, or old saying such *spokes* as the ancient
of the parish use"

H PORTER'S *Two Angry Women of Abingdon*.

"Where Galaad made his avowes and *hightes* (promises)."

HARDYNG'S *Chronicle*, p. 133

Hight = the preterite of the old verb *hatan* to call, promise.

* See Abbott's "Shakespeare's Grammar."

A substantive is easily used as a verb, thus Fuller in speaking of those writers who multiply on the map of the Holy Land streams bearing the name of "River of Egypt," says:—

"Such is the nimety of my caution herein, who have *Egypt rivered* this map to purpose."

FULLER, *A Pious sight of Palestine*, p. 618, ed. 1869.

"Do you think I *fable* with you?"

BEN JONSON'S *Alchemist*.

"*Rob.* 'Las sir, that lamb

Were most unnatural that should hate the dam.

Steph. Lamb me no lambs, Sir

ROWLEY, *A New Wonder*.

Adjectives are used as verbs without even the verbal ending *-en*. Shakespeare uses *to fat*, to fatten. Cp. *thai greteth* = grandescunt, *become great* (Palladius, *On Husbandrie*).

In Latin, nominal verbs are not uncommon, but they have a verbal form given them by the suffix to which the inflexions are added as *arbor-esc-o* from *arbor*, a tree. Fuller renders "*Hæc planta in Judæa aborescit*" by—

"*Hissop doth tree it in Judæa.*"

Pious Sight, p. 194.

An adverb may do duty for a verb, as:—

"They *askance* their eyes

SHAKESPEARE'S *Rape of Lucrece*.

Cp. "*To back* the horses," &c.

A preposition and a numeral, originally forming an adverbial phrase, has established itself as a verb and produced a noun. Cp. *atone* and *atonement*.

"The constable is called to *atone* the broil."

T. HEYWOOD's *English Traveller*.

"To *atone* two Israelites at variance "

FULLER, *A Pugn's Sight*, p. 519.

Any noun may be turned into an adjective; as a *gold* watch, a *church* steeple, a *silk* thread.

By the simple use of the suffix *-ed* (= possessing), we are able to give a participial, and therefore an adjective appearance to almost any noun Cp. *booted*, *spurred*, *one-eyed*, &c.

"As the Jews' coats were *collared* above, so they were *skirted* and *fringed* below, by God's special command "

FULLER, *A Pugn's Sight*, p. 524

Adjectives are easily converted into nouns. Cp. *simples*, *worthies*, *seconds*.

"When I first took thee, 'twas for *good* and *bad*.

O change thy *bad* to *good* "

T. HEYWOOD, *The late Lancashire Witches*.

"Fear not my fall; the *steep* is fairest *plain*."

LORD BRQOKE's *Alaham*.

"O these *extremes* of misery and joy.

'Tis said sometimes they'll [evil spirits] impudently stand
A flight of beams from the *forlorn* of day,
And scorn the crowing of the *sprightly* cocks "

J. CROWNE's *Thyestes*.

"And shall the *baser* over-rule the *better* ?

Or are they better since they are the *bigger* "

CHAPMAN's *Byron's Tragedy*.

Jove but my *equal*, *Cæsar* but my *second* "

BEN JONSON's *Sad Shepherd*.

Even pronominal forms are occasionally employed as nouns :—

"The cruel'st *she* alive."

SHAKESPEARE *Twelfth Night*, Act I Sc 5.

"The *she*s of Italy"

Cymbeline, Act I Sc 4.

"A wretch, a worm, a *nothing*"

FORD'S *'Tis Pity*, &c.

"Speak of thy fair *self*, Edith"

J FLETCHER'S *Bloody Brother*

"An unthroughfaresome *whatken*" (an impenetrable something) —FAIRFAX.

Interjections may be converted into substantives or verbs :—

"The effect of thine *O-yes*."

DEKKER, *Gull's Hornbook*.

"All the *foke*s in fairest ladys' mouths"

Id.

"This sorrowful *heigho*"

NASH, *Lenten Stuff*.

"Cough and *hem*."

"*Mew* at passionate speeches."

Id.

Mum and *hem* are used as adjectives in the following passage :—

"Now pleased, now froward, now *mum*, now *hem*"

Calisto and Melibœa.

A slight change of pronunciation replaces an inflexion Cp bathe and bath, glaze and glass, co'nduct and condu'ct.

CHAPTER VII.

Nouns.

I GENDER

79. Gender is a grammatical distinction and applies to *words* only. Sex is a natural distinction, and applies to *living objects*.

By personification we can speak of inanimate things as male or female, as

"The *Sun* in *his* glory, the *Moon* in *her* wane"

The Sun in his glory, the Moon in her wane

80. In the oldest English, the grammatical distinction of words as masculine, feminine and neuter, was marked by difference of endings, and difference of declensions.

Nouns ending in *-dom*, as *freedom* (freedom) were masculine, nouns ending in *-ung*, as *greeting* (greeting), and in *-nes*, as *godness* (godness), were feminine, and some diminutives in *-en*, as *maiden* (maiden), and *cycen* (chicken), were neuter; *wife* and *child* were originally neuter; *tongue*, *earth*, *week*, &c. were feminine, and *star*, *sea*, *tear*, &c. were masculine nouns.

Adjectives and many demonstrative and indefinite pronouns, (*he, she, this, such, an, some, &c.*) were declined in three genders, and agreed with the substantives to which they were joined in gender as well as in number and case

81. After the Norman Conquest, adjectives and adjective pronouns lost most of their case-suffixes in the three genders, so that the older distinctions could not well be kept up. In the fourteenth century, the genders of nouns were exchanged for mere marks of sex, names of males being of the *masculine* gender, those of females of the *feminine* gender, and the names of inanimate things of the *neuter* gender; so that, strictly speaking, the so-called *genders* in modern English do not belong to the *words* at all, but only to the objects they represent. The only *genders* in English are in the Pronouns.

82. There are three ways of distinguishing the masculine and feminine.

I. By the use of suffixes.

II. By composition.

III. By using distinct words for the name of the male and female.

Only the first method comes under the head of grammatical gender.

I — GENDER MARKED BY DIFFERENCES OF ENDINGS.

83. A.—Teutonic Suffixes.

These are now no longer in general use.

We have a trace of two old English suffixes to mark the feminine: (1) *-en*, (2) *-ster*.

Vix-en (O E. *fyx-en*), the feminine of *fox* (M.E.

vox), is the only one we have preserved out of a tolerably large number once in common use in the oldest English, as

Masc.	Fem.
ælf (elf).	ælf-en (she-elf).
cās-ere (emperor).	cāser-en (empress).
munec (monk).	munec-en (nun)
thēow (man-servant).	thēow-en (maid-servant).

In the fourteenth century the feminine in -en is rarely met with.

The change from o to i is regular when compared with the old English *god* (god), *gyd-en* (goddess), and *wulf* (wolf), *wylfen* (she-wolf) Cp. Ger. *Fuchs*, *Fuchs-inn*. This change is brought about by the addition of the original vowel in the syllable -en. Cp. *gold* and *gilden*; *cock* and *chicken*.¹

The suffix -ster exists in *spin-ster*. This is not strictly a feminine noun, because it does not correspond to a masculine spinner, but is merely restricted to an unmarried woman.

It originally meant a female spinner, as in the following passages.—

"Let the three housewifely *spinsters* of destiny rather curtail
the thread of thy life" *The Gull's Hornbook*.

"And my wyf at Westmunstre that wollene cloth made,
Spak to the *spinsters* for ðe spinne hit softe."

Piers Plowman, A. Pass. v. 130.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries we find

This change of the root-vowel (produced by assimilation of two vowels) is called, by German grammarians, *umlaut*

sempster, songster, huckster, and tapster used as feminine substantives:—

"Wassel, like a neat sempster, and songster *her* page
bearing a brown bowl" BEN JONSON

"The tapper of Tavystocke and the tapsters pottle."
JACK JUGGLER, p. 68, *Ed. Roxb. Club.*

"The backster of Baldockburye with *her* bakinge pele (*rod*)."
Id.

In the oldest English feminine nouns ending in **-estre (-ster)**, corresponded to masculines in **-ere (er)**.

Masc.	Fem.
bæc-ere (baker)	bæc-estre.
hearp-ere (harper).	hearp-estre
hopp-ere (dancer)	hopp-estre
rêd-ere (reader)	rêd-estre
sang-ere (singer)	sang-estre
scām-ere (sewer).	scām-estre
tæpp-ere (barman).	bæpp-estre.
webb-ere (weaver)	webb-estre.

In the fourteenth century the Norman-French suffix **-ess** began to replace the English **-ster**, though the older form lived on for some time side by side with its foreign substitute

In Wicliffe we find *sleestere* and *sleeresse* (a woman slayer), *dwellstere* and *dwelleresse* (female dweller), *singster* and *singeresse* (songster). The employment of **webster** and **songster** (Wicliffe), **huckster** (Trevisa), **shepster**, **backstere** and **brewstere** (Langland's "Piers Plowman"), **beggestere** (Chaucer), as masculine substantives shows us that even at this early period (Middle English) the force of the suffix **-was** con-

siderably weakened, and its origin obscured by the frequent use of the new ending *-ess*.

In the seventeenth century the following hybrids (containing the English *-ster* and the Norman-French *-ess*) made their appearance, song-str-ess, searn-str-ess, huck-str-ess, spin-str-ess (Howell), tap-str-ess (T. Heywood)

The suffix *-ster* now merely marks the agent, as, *foolster*; often with more or less a sense of contempt or depreciation, as, *gamester*, *punster*, *trickster*, *youngster*.

A large number of words with this suffix, very common in the Elizabethan period, have gone out of common use : *drugster, hackster, lewdster, oldster, roadster, &c.*

84. In the oldest English -a marks the masculine, and -e the feminine gender.

Masc.	Fem.
ass-a (ass).	ars-e
mag-a (kinsman).	mag-e.
nef-a (nephew)	nef-e.
ræg-a, rāha (hart).	ræg-e.
webb-a (weaver)	webb-e.
wicc-a (sorcerer).	wicc-e.
widuw-a (widower).	widuw-e.
han-a (cock).	hen (= henn-e).
gât, (goat).	gât-e.
wulf (wolf)	wylf (= wylf-e).
hlāford (lord).	hlāfdig-e.

In the thirteenth century -a was weakened to -e, consequently there was no distinction in form between the masculine and feminine singular. The weak forms were *wele* and *wele*.

Witch was of the common gender up to a very late period.

"Your honour is a *witch*"

SIR WALTER SCOTT, *Fortunes of Nigel*, 2.

Wizzard has no connection with witch, but is the O.F. *guise-art*, a wise man

Widower is a new formation from the feminine *widow*, it occurs in "Piers Plowman" (B ix 174)

Neve (= nef-a) gave way in the thirteenth century to *nephew* (M E *newew*, *nevu*, from O F *neveu*, Lat *nepos*), but the old feminine *nifte* was kept up to a much later period.

85 B—Romance Suffixes.

(1) **-ess** (Fr *-esse* M Lat *-issa*). The Latin *-issa* makes its appearance before the Norman Conquest in *abbudisse*, *abbess*. Before the middle of the fourteenth century, the Norman-French **-ess** occurs only a few times as the ending of Romance words that had already found their way into the language. **Cuntesse** (countess) is found as early as 1140, **clergesse** occurs about 1210, **hostesse** and **empe-esse** about 1278, **charmeresse** and **maystresse** (mistress) in 1340.

In the time of Wicliffe and Chaucer, this suffix established itself in the language as the ending of feminine nouns, being added to English as well as Romance roots.

Wicliffe has **-ess** for **-ster** in **dawnseresse**, **frendesse**, **neighboresse**, **techeresse**, **thralesse**. He uses **-ess** in many substantives that had no **-ess** in Norman-French, as **cosynesse**, **devouresse**, **prophetesse**, **servauntesse**, **spousesse**.

In the Elizabethan period the number of words in **-ess** was far greater than at present, this shows that the suffix is now restricted in its application. We no

longer retain **waggoness**, **rectress** (Chapman), **doctress** (Stanyhurst), **neatress** (Warner), **fosteress** (Ben Jonson), &c

One form is now frequently used in both genders, as *singer*, *dancer*, *cousin*, *house*, &c.

In modern English, **-ess** is the ordinary suffix of the feminine, and it is added both to native and borrowed words, as **goddess**, **murderess**, **actress**, **baroness**.

a The suffix **-ess** is added to the simple masculine as **baroness**.

b The masculine ending is sometimes dropped before the **-ess**; as **sorceress** from **sorcerer**.

c The masculine ending is shortened before the addition of **-ess**; as **actress** from **actor**.

Duchess is from O F *duc-esse*, *duch-esse*

Marchioness is formed from M L *marchio*

Mistress = O F and O E *maistresse* from *maister* = *master* and *master*

Lass is perhaps a contraction of *laddess*

(2) **-ine** in **hero-ine**; and in **landgrav-ine** and **margrav-ine**, from the German **landgrave** and **margrave**.

(3) **-a** in **donn-a**, **infanta**, **sultana**, **signora**.

(4) Lat **-trix** from Latin nouns in **-tor** occurs in some nouns taken directly from the Latin, as **adjutor**, **adjutrix**, **testator**, **testatrix**.

Empress was originally *emperice*, Fr *imperatrice*, Lat acc *imperatricem*

Nurse = M E *nurce*, *noyise*, Fr *nourrice*, Lat acc *nurcem*

II. GENDER DENOTED BY COMPOSITION.

86. In the oldest English we find instances of a general term compounded with an attribute, as *man-child* = *manchild* *carl's friend* = a male friend (hard), *wymmen-child* = *wymmenchild* *feowle here*, *she here*, *her here*, *he* a female friend.

In the fourteenth century we find *knave-child*, boy; *mayde-child*, girl (Trevisa); *men-syngers*, *wymmen-syngers*, *men's child* *feowle here*, *she here*, *her here*, *he*.

In Modern English, we use

(1) **Male and female** as **male-servant**, **female-servant**; **male-cat**, **female-bee**.

(2) **Man, woman, or maid**, as **man servant**, **woman-servant**, or **maid-servant**. Sometimes **man** is added to the feminine, and **woman** to the masculine to mark contempt, as **man-milliner**, **woman-titan**.

(3) **He and she** occur mostly in the names of animals, as **he-goat**, **she-goat**.

This last method was not employed in the oldest English, and did not come into use before the fourteenth century, and then only in the names of animals.

In the Elizabethan period **he** and **she** were used as nouns.

"The proudest *he*,"—SHAKESPEARE

"These *shes* were nymphs of the chymney"

FULLER.

It is used as late as Dryden's time.

"Another *he*"—*Abs. and Achill.*

III DIFFERENT WORDS FOR THE MASCULINE AND FEMININE

87. The use of distinct words for the masculine and feminine, as *father*, *mother*, &c. does not belong to grammatical gender.

88. A few correlative terms, apparently distinct, are etymologically connected.

Masc.	Fem
lad.	lass (= lad-ess)
lord.	lady (a final <i>e</i> , denoting the fem has been lost)
nephew.	niece (Cp. Lat. nepos, nep-tis).
king.	queen (from the root <i>kin</i> , the primitive meaning of king = father, queen = mother).

89. The rule that the feminine is formed from the masculine is violated in the following words, in which the masculine is formed from the feminine:—

(1) **Bridegroom** (from *bride*) = the brde's man ; groom = *goom*, O.E. *guma*, E.E. *gome*, a man. There was an E.E. *grom* = boy.

(2) **Widower** (from *widow*). See § 35, p. 19.

(3) **Gander** (from *gans*, the original form of *goose*).

In the O E *gandr-a* (= *gandr-a* = *gans-a*), the *a* is the sign of the masculine ; *d* is merely a euphonic addition after *n*, and *r* represents a more original *s*.

(4) **Drake** is a compound from the root *end* (a *dr̥n̥k*), with an obsolete suffix *-rake*, signifying *king*. (Cp. the suffix *-rick* in *bishoprick*)

II.—NUMBER.

90 English, like most modern languages, has two numbers, **singular** and **plural**.

Some languages, as French, have only one mode of forming the plural. In English, we have various ways of denoting the plural, one only of which (the addition of **s** to the singular), is in common use.

In the oldest English there were several plural suffixes, **-as**, **-an**, **-a**, **-u** (**-o**): **stan-as** = stones, **steorr-an** = stars, **hand-a** = hands, **lim-u** = limbs. The most common of these was the suffix **-an**. After the Norman Conquest these were reduced (in the thirteenth century) to **-es**, **-en**; and finally the termination **-es** or **-s** became the ordinary sign of the plural.

The suffix **-as** was originally the plural sign of only *one* declension of masculine nouns, as **fisc** (fish), **smith**; pl, **fisc-as**, **smith-as**. It is now the only *living* suffix which is employed when we borrow new nouns and inflect them in the plural. All other plural endings are merely the relics of a former period in which **-es** (later **-us**, **-ys**, **-is**), and still remained for the most part a distinct syllable.

" His *sones* and his *doughtres*, bothe I mene "
OCCLEVE, *De Reg Prin* 620.

" To heere *Go lus soos dus* thei han forborn "
O L. *Misc* f 226

" Her *bodyys* wer lyke *dragonys*,
 For *tayles* wer lyke *schorpyonys*,
 They had *naylys* on her *knocus*,
 That wer lyke ankyl *kokys* "

Tundal, 41 ed 1843.

" His life
 That vanisht into smoke and *clowdes* swift "

SPENSER, *Faerie Queene*, I. xl. 54

In the fourteenth century, words of French origin were the first to thrust out the *e*, and adopt the simple suffix -s (or -z)

This loss of *e* brings the letter -s into immediate contact with the final letter of the singular, and causes the following phonetic modifications.—

a If the singular noun ends in a flat consonant, a liquid, or a vowel, -s has the sound of *z*, as *tubs*, *lads*, *stags*, *hills*, *hens*, *feathers*, *days*, &c

b. If the singular ends in a sharp consonant, -s is pronounced sharp, (as in *mouse*), as *traps*, *pits*, *stacks*, &c (For the reason of this see § 63, p. 45)

As far as the spoken language is concerned, it would be more correct to say that the plural is formed by adding *s* or *z* to the singular.

The fuller form -es which succeeded -ez to the singular, is to be retained when the singular ends in a sharp or flat sound (*s*, *z*, *x*, *sh*, *ch*, *j*), as *gas-es*, *glass-es*, *wish-es*, *priz-es*, *fox-es*, *church-es*, *ag-es*, *judg-es*.

Nouns of pure English origin, whose singulars end in -f, -fe, -v, &c, form their plurals by changing *f* to *v*, and adding -es, as *leaf*, *leaves*, *wolf*, *wolves*.

This change of *f* to *v* is not known before the eleventh century. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries we find it taking place in the dative case of nouns, *wolf* (nom.), *wolve* (dative), and

in the plural of adjectives *def* (sing.) *deve* (pl.) *deaf*. It seems that *f* between two vowels was pronounced as *v*. Cp. O.E. *heafod*, E.E. *heved*, M.E. *heed*, head, &c.

Remains of older Plural Formations.

91. Plural formed by Vowel Change. The chief changes are—

Sing.	Plural
a.	e.
oo.	ee.
ou.	i.
Sing	Plural
man, O.E. man	men, O.E. men.
foot, O.E. fōt	feet, O.E. fēt
goose, O.E. gēs	geese, O.E. gēs.
tooth, O.E. tōth	teeth, O.E. tēth.
mouse, O.E. mūs.	mice, O.E. mȳs.
louse, O.E. lūs	lice, O.E. lȳs.
cow, O.E. cu.	kal(-ne), O.E. cȳ.

In these words the primitive suffix *s* has been lost together with a preceding vowel, which modified the root vowel. Thus the old pl. of *boec* (a book) was *lêc*, which stands for a more primitive *boecis*. This change of vowel was not limited to the plural, but took place in the dative of all these words, as, *boec* (nom.) *lêc* (dative).

Breeches, breeks, had for its oldest plural *briêc*, M.E. *briec*, formed by vowel change from *briec* *B, r, c*,

fyrig, tyrf, were once the plurals of *borough* (O.E. *burh*), *furrow* (O.E. *furh*), *turf* (O.E. *turf*).

92. Plurals in *-en* (O.E. *-an*), as *ox*, *oxen*.

Hosen (English Bible), *shoon* (Shakespeare), are more or less obsolete. Spenser has *eyen* (eyes), and *foen* (foes). In a work written about 1420 we find *been* (bees), *een* (eyes), *fleen* (flies), *pesen* (peas), *toon* (toes).

In the oldest English, plurals in *-en* were exceedingly common, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries they became still more numerous because the older plurals in *-a*, *-u*, became first *-e*, and then *-en* ¹.

In the fourteenth century they became of less frequent occurrence, and in the northern dialects only *eyen*, *oxen*, and *hosen* were in common use.

Children, brethren, and kine did not originally form their plurals in *-en* (*-n*).

Children.—The oldest plural was *cild-r-u*, which became (1) *child-r-e* (and *childer*)², (2) *child-r-en* (and *children*).

"The *childer* are pretty *childer*"

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, Act. 1. Sc. 2.

In M.E. we find *calv-en* (calves), *eyr-en* (eggs), and *lamb-r-en* (lambs): the last two are found as late as 1420.

"Late *lamber*" = late lambs.

PALLADIUS' *Husbandrie*, p. 145, l. 154.

Brethren was (1) *brothr-u*, (2) *brothr-e*, *brothr-e* (brether), (3) *brothren*, *brethren*.

¹ For proof of this, see O.E. Hom. first series, pp. xxvii.—*xxii*, second series, p. xiv; *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, pp. xi-xxv.

² The E.E. *-re* became M.E. *-er*. Cp. *alre* = *aller*, (of all).

as singular and takes a plural, ss, two *surplices*. But this is a comparatively modern usage.

"A hundred pieces of *va pence*."

The Book of Princes, p. 164

The forms *pence*, *mice*, &c show that the O.E. *s* had only the sharp sound in *mouse* and not the flat sound in *pens*

Peas (taken individually, the plural of *pea*), **pease** (taken collectively)

Pease O E *pusa* (pl *pesen*), is the correct form.

"Pease are an excellent seed"

FITZHERBERT'S *Husbandrie*, p. 15

In ME we find the plurals *pesen* and *peses*. The *s* in *peses* is a plural marker, not a case marker. The plural marker *s* is also found in the plural *peas*.

"A red berry as big as a peach"

GERARDE'S *Herbal*, p. 53.

"Benes, *peses*"—PALLADIUS' *Ilusbondrie*, p. 149, l. 8

When two forms of a word occur, they must either get different meanings and so be utilised, or else one of them must drop out of use. Cp *morrow* and *morning*, *latest* and *last*, &c.

05. False Plurals.

The **s** in **alms, riches, eaves**, is not a sign of the plural any more than it is in *largess, lachess*, &c. These words are however treated as plural, although singular in form.

Alms is a curtailed form of the O.E. *ælmesse*, pl *ælmissen* (M.E. *almesse*, *almes*, T.E. *almous*, pl *almessen*, *almesses*). Cp. *alms* deed.

⁴⁴ Angels desire *an alms*.

$$M_1 = 1.5 \times 10^{22} \text{ g}, \quad M_2 = 1.5 \times 10^{22} \text{ g}$$

Riches.—M E *richesse*, pl *richesses*, O.F. *richesce*, Fr. *richesse*.

"Yet all the *rakes* in the world that *is* riseth of the ground
by God's sending "

"Yet *is* *the* *world* *that* *is* *riseth* *of* *the* *ground*
by *God's* *sending* "

Eaves = O.E. *yfes*, *efese*, margin, edge; (M.E. *eves*,
ovis; pl. *eveses*), pl. *efesen* (cp. T.E. *escen-droppers*).

"Ysekeles in *eveses* "

Piers Plowman, B p. 315

96. Plural Forms treated as Singulars.

Some plural forms are frequently treated as singulars; as, amends, bellows, gallows, means, news, odds, pains, shambles, tidings, wages, thanks, small-pox (= small-pock-s, cp. pock-mark).

"A little amends "

Spectator, *Piers Plowman*, B. p. 338.

"A gallows"—*Esther*, v. 14.

"The bellows blows."

SHAKESPEARE, *Pericles*, I. 2.

"A means"—*Winter's Tale*, IV 3.

"By this means;" "this news."

Measure for Measure, III. 2

"A fearful odds."—*King Henry IV.*, Part III.

"That tidings."—*Julius Caesar*, IV 3.

"A shambles"—WHITLOCK, p. 97.

"A thanks "

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, vol. I. p. 5.

"The small-pocke"—A. BOORDE

The singulars *amend*, *gallow*, *mean*, *pain*, *tidings*, *wage*, *thank*,
are found in older writers

97. Nouns used only in the Plural.

(1) These are the names of things that consist of
more than one part, or form a pair.

100. Plural of Compounds.

In compounds the plural is formed by *s*, as, *black-birds*, *paymasters*. When the adjective (after the French idiom) is the last part of a compound, the sign of the plural is added to the noun, *attorneys-general*, *courts-martial*, *knights-errant*, &c ; cp the prepositional compounds, *sons-in-law*, *lookers-on*. In a few titles the last usually takes the plural sign, as *major-generals*, *lord-lieutenants*. A few others have both terms in the plural, *knights-templars*, *lords-justices*, *lords-appellants*.

We say *master-bakers*, but Robert of Brunne has *masters mareschals*.

Compounds in *-full* were once strictly adjectival (cp. *baileful*, &c), and took no plural.

"Three *sponsefull* of vinger"

A BOORDE

"A *potful* hony"

PALLADIUS' *Husbandrie*, p 95, l 963

"Syx hondred *syppful* knyghtes"

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER, l 3523

"Thre *schipful* of knyghtes"

Ib. l 2418.

III—CASE

101. The different forms which a noun (or pronoun) takes, to mark its relations to other words in a sentence, are called **Cases**.

The moveable or variable suffixes that express these relations are called *case-endings*.

Case means a *falling*. The nominative was considered by the old grammarians as the upright form, from which the other

forms were *falling off*, or declensions (Cp the term declension) The Romans applied the term *case* to the nominative (*casus ractus*), not so the Greeks, from whom the idea was borrowed

The oldest English had six cases: **Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Instrumental.**

In Modern English we have the subject-noun or *Nominative case*, the object-noun or *Objective case*, and the *Possessive case*. The *Nominative* and *Objective case* of nouns have the same form, and both are without case-endings. The *Objective* includes the *Accusative* or direct object of a transitive verb, and the impersonal object or *Dative case*, generally expressed by the noun with the preposition *to* or *for* before it. It is sometimes called the *Indirect object*

The true Dative (of nouns and pronouns) is seen in such expressions as, *he bought his brother a farm, I made me great works, woe worth the day; woe is me; me-thinks, me-seems, &c.* The infinitive of *purpose* is a dative in "*Their feet make haste to shed blood.*"

We have preserved the O.E. genitive *-s*, but all other endings have gone, *e* for the dative singular, and *um* for the plural have disappeared

In the thirteenth century a final *e* represented both the singular and plural dative. The loss of this final *e* in the fourteenth century, left the dative and accusative undistinguished in form from the nominative

Possessive Case.

102. The **Possessive case**, unlike the *Nominative* and *Objective*, is marked by a distinct form. Our possessive is the representative of the older genitive,

but we can see how much its force is weakened when we find as late as 1420 such expressions as *strengthes qualitee* (the quality of strength), *cannys knottes* (the knots of cane), *vynes rootes* (roots of vines).

In the oldest English there were various declensions, as in Greek and Latin, and different genitive suffixes for the singular and the plural.

The suffixes for the singular in the first period were -es, *smith-es* (smith's), -an, *steorr-an* (star's) -e, *rod-e* (rood's) *sun-a* (son's)

For the plural they were -a, as, *smith-a*, *rod-a*, *sun-a*, -ena, as, *steorr-ena*

In the thirteenth century the suffixes of the genitive in the singular were -es and -e; in the plural -ene (-en), -e, and the modern form -es which often replaced the others.

In the fourteenth century the suffixes of the genitive in the singular were -es and -e; in the plural -ene (-en), -e, and the modern form -es which often replaced the others.

103. The O E. suffix -es was at first limited to the singular of certain masculine and neuter nouns, but was afterward extended to the feminine.

The ending -es (-us, -ys, -is) made a distinct syllable in the older stages of the language.

"And by the *poets* mediocroun."

CHAUCER *Man of Lawes Tale*, l. 334.

"And cristendom of *prestes* handes longe"

Id. l. 377.

"The *nightes* char (car) the stars about doth bring."

LORD SURREY

"Larger than the *moones* sphere"

SHAKESPEARE, *Midsum. Night's Dream*, II. 1.

Formation of the Possessive Case.

104. The **Possessive case** (singular and plural) is formed in the written language by the suffix **-s**. In the *spoken* language it has the same phonetic modifications as the plural **-s**. (See § 90, p 71, § 63, p 45).

The apostrophe in the singular marks the elision of the *e* of the old **-es**

The general use of the apostrophe in the singular is not found much before the end of the seventeenth century. It was probably employed to distinguish the possessive case from the plural number. Its use may have been established from a false theory of the origin of the suffix **-s**, which prevailed from Ben Jonson's to Addison's time, namely, that it was a contraction of *his*, hence such expressions as —

"For Jesus Christ *his* sake."—*Prayer Book*

"The emblem is *Camerarius his*" = (Cameranus's)

WHITLOCK, p 52

We find this corruption towards the close of the fourteenth century. Trevisa has "*eagle his nest*" = eagle's nest.

-is, another form of **-es** was sometimes written apart from its noun, and hence perhaps the confusion of *his* with **-is**, or **-es**.

In the thirteenth century we find *his* for **-is** (**-es**) intentionally used after proper names.

Nouns forming their plural by vowel change, or by the suffix **-n**, take the possessive sign after the plural; as, *men's*, *oxen's*, *children's*.

Nouns forming their plurals in **-s** were thought to be without the case-sign, hence in writing the possessive came to be marked by the apostrophe, as *boys'*.¹

When a singular noun ends in an **s** sound, the possessive sign is dropped, and the apostrophe (often

¹ This came about in the seventeenth century, through the notion that the *s* in *boys'* was the sign of the plural number, and not of the possessive case.

omitted) marks its absence; as, for *justice*' sake, for *conscience*' sake, your *highness*' love, &c.

In foreign proper names (of two or more syllables) ending in *s*, the possessive is unchanged. Cp. *Moses*' law, *Thetis*' wrath, *Olympus*' top

In common English names we generally sound an additional syllable; as *James*'s (pronounced *Fams-es*).

"*Peerses* berne^s," " *Peerses* wyf."

Piers Plowman, C. p. 148

105. In compounds the possessive suffix is added to the last term, *the son-in-law's house*, *William-the-Conqueror's reign*.

Sometimes we find the principal substantive inflected as in the older stages

"For his *grace's* sake the cardinal."—FORD.

"Constance the *Kynges* sister of France"

= The King of France's sister.—FABYAN.

"*Eadwardes kynges* leue"

= King Edward's leave

"On *Willames* daye the yonger *Kynges*"

= On King William the younger's day.—*O E Miscell* p. 145.

"*Sæberhtes* deað east seaxna *cyniges*"

= The death of Sæberht, king of the East Saxons.—*Bod.* II. 5.

The Case absolute.

106. In the oldest period the dative was the absolute case. About the middle of the fourteenth century the nominative began to replace it. Pecock (A.D. 1449) has a few instances of the dative: "*Him it witing and not weerthing*," = *he knowing it and not forbidding it* (II. 325). Milton occasionally imitates the Latin construction, as "*him* destroyed." In the use of the passive participle we have introduced *being*, as, "*this being done*," which was in the sixteenth century, "*this done*."

107. Declension of the Old English Noun.

I.—MASCULINE AND NEUTER NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN *-es*.

wulf, wolf, scip, ship; word, word

		<i>Singular</i>	
		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	}	wulf	scip
Voc.			word
Gen.		wulf-es	scip-es
Dat.		wulf-e	scip-e
Acc.		wulf	scip
Inst.		wulf-ê	scip-ê
<i>Plural</i>			
Nom.	}	wulf-as	scip-u
Voc.			word
Gen.		wulf-a	scip-a
Dat.		wulf-um	scip-um
Acc.		wulf-as	scip-u
Inst.		wulf-um	scip-um

II.—FEMININE NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN *-e*.

gifu, gift, dæd, deed.

		<i>Singular.</i>	
Nom.	}	gif-u	dæd
Voc.			
Gen.		gif-e	dæd-e
Dat.		gif-e	dæd-e
Acc.		gif-e	dæd (dæd-e)
Inst.		gif-ê	dæd-ê
<i>Plural</i>			
Nom.	}	gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Voc.			
Gen.		gif-a (git ena)	dæd-a
Dat.		gif-um	dæd-um
Acc.		gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Inst.		gif-um	dæd-um

III —STEMS IN -n

steorr-a, star, tung-e, tongue, eâg-e, eye

Sing	Masc	Fem	Neut
Nom } Voc }	steorr-a	tung-e	eâg-e
Gen	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Dat. } Inst }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Acc	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-e

Plural			
Nom } Voc }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Gen	steorr-ena	tung-ena	eâg-ena
Dat. } Inst }	steorr-um	tung-um	eâg-um
Acc	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an

IV —STEMS IN -n

brôthor, brother.

Singular			Plural		
Nom	Acc	}	Nom	Acc	}
Voc			Voc		
Gen			Gen.		
Dat }			Dat }		
Inst }			Inst. }		

brôthor
brôthor
brêthor

brôthr-u, brôthor
brôthr-a
brothr-um

108. Declension of Nouns in the thirteenth century —

I —wulf, wolf; scip, ship, word, word

	Masc	Neut
Nom } Voc }	wulf	scip, schip word
Gen.	wulu-es (wulf-es)	scip-es word-es
Dat.	wulu-e (wulf-e)	scip-e (scip-en) word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip word

Plural.

Masc.

Nom. Acc	Voc.	wulu-es (wulf-es)
Gen		wulu-e (wulu-en, wulu-ene)
Dat.		wulu-e (wulu-es, wulu-en)

Neut

Nom	Acc	Voc	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es)	word, (word-es)
Gen			scip-e (scip-ene, scip-es)	word-e (word-es)
Dat.			scip-e (scip-en, scip-es)	word, (word-es)

II.—Hand (hond), hand, dede, deed

Singular

		<i>Fem</i>		<i>Fem</i>
Nom	Acc	} ded-e		hond, hand
	Voc			
Gen		ded-e		hond-e
Dat.		ded-e		hond-e

Plural

Nom	Acc	} ded-e (-en, -es)		hond-e (-en -es)
	Voc			
Gen		ded-e (-es)		hond-e (-es)
Dat		ded-en (-e, -es)		hond-en (-e, -es)

III.—Sterr-e, star, tunge, tongue; eȝe, (eye).

Singular.

		<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
Nom	}	sterr-e		tunge		eȝe
Voc						
Gen		sterr-e (-en, -es)		tunge (-es)		eȝ-e (-es)
Dat.		sterr-e (-en)		tunge (-en)		eȝ-e (-en)
Acc		sterr-e (-en)		tunge (-en)		eȝ-e

Plural.

Nom	}	sterr-en (-e, -es)		tunge (-e, -es)		eȝ-en (-es)
Voc						
Gen		sterr-ene		tunge-ene		eȝ-ene
Dat.		sterr-en (-e)		tunge-en (-e)		eȝ-en (-e)
Acc.		sterr-en (e, es)		tunge-en (-e, -es)		eȝ-en (-es)

IV.—The words *fæder* (*fader*), *brother*, *suster*, *moder*, *doȝter*, (*dohter*), in the singular take no genitive inflexion. In the dative we find sometimes a final *-e*. In the plural we find nominatives in *-es*, *-en*, *-e*; as *faderes*, *brotheres* (*brothers*), *dohtres*, *sostres*, *brotheren*, *brethren*, *dohtren*, *deht en*, *sustren*, *modren*, *brothre*, *dohtere*, &c.

In the thirteenth century the genitive plural has sometimes the suffix *-ene* (*-en*), but more often *-es*.

The dative plural ends in *-en*, *-e* and sometimes in *-es*.

In the fourteenth century there is but little trace of the dative singular or plural.

The nominative plural of nouns ends in *-es* (*-is*, *-y*, *-us*), without respect to gender, though many plurals in *-en* are found.

The genitive singular ends in *-es* (*-is*, *-us*, *-ys*).

Some feminines keep up the old genitive form in *-e*.

The genitive plural for the most part is like the nominative plural. We have still a trace of the old genitive plural *-ene*, (*-en*). See § 102, p. 80.

CHAPTER VIII

Adjectives.

109* The English adjective has lost all the older inflexions of *number, gender, and case*

In Chaucer's time, and a little later, we find (1) a final *e* used to mark the plural, as, "the *smale* fowles;" (2) a final *e* to denote the definite adjective, "the *yonge* sonne." "his *halfe* cours."

Cp. " And ouhen sche walkit had a lytill thrawe

$\{T_m\}_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence of functions from X to X such that $T_m(x) = x$ for all $x \in X$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

Step 1: $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$

JAMES I OF SCOTLAND, *The King's Quhair*.
about 1423.¹

In the phrase "in the olden time," we have perhaps a trace of the definite declension.

The word *ones* does duty for an inflexional *e* in the plural, as M.E. "these tweyne^o*blde*" = these two old ones

110. Adjectives used as substantives form their plural regularly, as *wantons*, *calms*, *shallows*. In the fourteenth century only Norman-French adjectives used substantively could be thus inflected, as, *viles*, *precieuses*, native words formed their plural by

* This is a Scottish imitation of Chaucer.

adding the final *e*, as *sucte* (sweets), *soure* (sour). In the sixteenth century we find this new method extended to English words, as *yonges* = young ones (L. Andrewe, in *Babees Book*, p. 231)

When an adjective of Norman-French origin qualified a noun, the adjective was often followed by *es* (in). *He has cosins es*. Traces of this construction are found in later English.

III. In *alderliest* = dearest of all (Shakespeare, 2 *King Henry VI.* i. i.), we have one very late instance of the old genitive plural suffix *-er*. *Alder* = M. E. *aller*, E. E. *alre*, O. E. *al-ra*, the gen. pl. of *all*.

"Now Jesu Christ be your *alder* speed"

"Adam owre *aller* fader"

Piers Plowman, B p. 298

"Sweetest *alre* thinge"

O. E. M. 11. 11. 11.

112. Declension of the O.E. Adjective.

STRONG OR INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

<i>Singular</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	blind	blind	blind
Voc.	blind	blind	blind
Gen.	blind-es	blind-re	blind-es
Dat.	blind-um	blind-re	blind-um
Acc.	blind-ne	blind-e	blind
Inst.	blind-ê	blind-re	blind-ê

<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u
Voc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u
Gen.	blind-ra	blind-ra	blind-ra
Dat.	blind-um	blind-um	blind-um
Acc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u

WEAK OR DEFINITE DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	blind-a	blind-e	blind-e
Voc.	blind-a	blind-e	blind-e
Gen.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-an
Dat.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-an
Acc.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-en

<i>Plural.</i>			
Masc, Fem, Neut,			
Nom.	blind-an		
Voc.			
Acc.			
Gen.	blind-ena		
Dat.	blind-um		

113. In the thirteenth century we find the following forms of the strong declension.

		<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	} blind		blind-e	blind
Voc.				
Gen.	blind-es		blind-re (-e)	blind-es
Dat.	blind-e (-en)		blind-re (-e)	blind-e
Acc.	blind-ne (-e)		blind-e	blind

Plural for all genders —

Nom	} blind-e
Voc	
Gen.	blind-ere (-re, -e)
Dat.	blind-en (-e)
Acc.	blind-e

The *er* ending is used for the plural of *blind*, *blind-ere*, *blind-en*, *blind-e* (or *-en*)

Sometimes the definite form takes the inflexions of the indefinite declension.

In the fourteenth century we find a final *e* used to mark (1) the plural, and (2) the definite form and vocative case of the adjective (See § 109, p. 87)

Comparison of Adjectives.

114 **Comparison** is that change of form which the adjective undergoes to denote degrees of quantity or quality. Adverbs that have sprung from adjectives may be compared.

There are three **degrees of comparison**, the **positive** or simple form of the adjective, the **comparative** formed by adding *-er* to the positive, the **superlative** by adding *-est* to the positive.

This rule applies (1) to all words of one syllable, (2) to some words of two syllables, especially those with the accent on the last syllable.

Orthographical changes :—

(1) When the positive ends in -e, the comparison is formed by
cruelest; *cheerful*, *cheerfuller*, *cheerfullest*.

Adjectives of more than two syllables, and most adjectives of two syllables are compared by **more** and **most**.

The words *more* and *most* are pure English words, but the use of them to express comparison is due to Norman-French influence. This mode of comparison came into use towards the end of the thirteenth century, and was frequently employed by the writers of the fourteenth century.

But even at this time, adjectives of any number of syllables might be compared by -er and -est. The writers of the Elizabethan period paid very little regard to the length of the adjective.

"The *delectablest* lusty night and *movingest* object me thought it was."—NASH's *Lenten Stuff*, p. 9, ed. 1871.

15. Double comparisons are not uncommon in Middle and Modern English. Some of these double forms arose out of an attempt to strengthen the comparison, as *more kinder*, *most straitest*. Others arose through the comparative degree of some irregular forms being mistaken for the positive.

"The *lesser* lights."—GEN. 1. 16.

"*More better*."—TEMP. 1. 2.

"The *worser* of the twain"—WARNER.

"*Lesse* gifts and *lesser* games I weigh them not."

HALL's *Satyres*, Book II. 2

Some numerals, pronominal words, prepositions, &c., have a comparative suffix, -ther (-ter), as o-ther, whe-ther, af-ter, un-der.

Traces of an old superlative in are to be found in form-er and for-m-ost. (See § 117, p. 96.)

116. Irregular Comparisons.

I WITH VOWEL CHANGE IN THE COMPARATIVE
AND SUPERLATIVE.

Old, elder, eldest (O.E. *eald, ald, yldra, eldra, yldest, eldest*).

Elder and eldest are archaic, and are replaced by the more recent forms, **older and oldest**.

Cp O E *lang, lengra, lengest, strang, strengra, strengest*
This change is caused by the original vowel before the suffix -s
and -st

Nigh, nigher, nighest, (next).

Near, nearer, nearest.

O E *neāh, neh, nyra, nearra, neāhst, nehst.*

M.E. *negh, nigh, nerre, nere, nerrer, neghest, neyest, next, nest.*

The true representatives of the O E. forms are
nigh, near, (nigher), next

Near is a comparative form, **nearer** is a double comparative

"The Knyst asked leeve to ryde by an other way that was
nere (= nearer)."—*Gest Rom*, p 34.

"You're early up, pray God it be the *near*"

GREEN'S *Friar Bacon* See *Macbeth* II., 4.

Next is a contracted form $k + s = k + s = x$ Cp M E.
next = *highest, coxcomb* = *cock's comb*.

Late, latter, last.

Late, later, latest.

O E *læt* (late), *lator, latost, lætemest*. In the thirteenth century we find *late, lattre, latist* (*latst*).

The distinction between *latter* and *later*, *latest* and *last*, is quite a modern one

"The sea gravel is *lattest* for to drie,
And *lattest* may thou therewith edifie."

1420 PALLADIUS, p. 14, ll. 363-4.

Last arises by assimilation out of *lat-st*. Cp
best = O E. *bet-st*, *gospel* = *godspel*.

(*Rathe*,) *rather*, (*rathest*).

O.E. *hræth*, *hræthra* (*hræthra*), *hræthost*.

Rathe in Milton means *early*, as,

"The *rathe* primrose"—*Lycidas*

"The *rather* born lambs"—SPENSER

"Late and *rathe*."—*Piers Plowman* B p. 132

"T. . . . *rathe* . . ."—*Trevisa* III p. 145

" . . . *rathe* . . ."—PALLADIUS, p. 66.

II. FROM OBSOLETE ROOTS.

Good, better, best.

O E. *gōd*, *betera*, (*betra*), *betest*, *best*.

The positive of *better* is *bat* = *good*, which root is found in O.E. *betan*, 'to make good,' 'amend,' and *boot*, in 'to boot.'

For vowel change in *better* see *elder*; for *best* see *last*.

Bad }
Evil } worse, worst.
Ill }

O E. *yfel*, *wyrsa*, *wyrrest*, *wyrst*.

Wor-se, *wor-st*, are formed from the root *wear*,
bad

The *-se* = *-re* (*-er*) Cp *less*, O E *les-se*

In the phrase "the weaker had the *wer*" (Harding), we have the remnant of the Danish *wærr*. Spenser uses *wor* = *worse*.

"Was neuer warre o moder born."

Cursor Mundí, p. 68, C.

"Was neuer worre of moder borne."—*Ib.* F.

Little, less, least.

O.E. *lytel*, *læssa*, *læsest*, *læst*.

The root of *less* and *least* is not the lit of 'little,' but *las*, 'infirm.' Cp. Goth *lasiws*, 'weak.' The vowel-change is like that in *better*.

Much, more, most.

O.E. *micel*, *māra*, *mæst*.

Much is from *mycel*, through the forms *micel*, *muchel*, *mochel*.

Mo-re contains the root *mah*, or *magh*, to be great Cp. *mai-n*, O.E. *mæg-en*.

O.E. *micel*, M.E. *muchel*, *much*, *moch* = great, large.

"He seide it was not half *moch* inow."—*CHaucer*

"A *much* berd" = a great beard

Sir G and the G Knyght | I.

Mo (*mac*), a shortened form of *more*, is used by Elizabethan writers for *more*. Gill makes *mo* the comparative of *many*; *more* the comparative of *much*. The Lowland Scotch has a similar distinction.

III. FROM ADVERBIAL ROOTS OF TIME AND PLACE.

Far, farther, farthest.

O.E. *feor*, *fyrre*, *fyrrest*, M.E. *fer*, *ferre*, (*ferrer* *ferrest*)

Farther. The correct comparative is *farrer* = M.E. *ferrer*.

"þan mon (must) he gyf light
Als *fer* als þe some dose and *ferrer*"

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.

Far (M.E. *ferre*) = 'farther,' occurs in *Winter's Tale*, IV 4.

The *th* in *farther* has crept in from false analogy with *further*, M.E. *forther*, *ferther*.

Furth-er (O.E. *furthor*, superlative *furthmest*), is the comparative of *forth*.

"He went him *forth* and *forther* soght"—C. *Mundi*, C. l. 4107.

"He went *forth* and *further* sost"—*ib.* T.

"He went *forth* and *ferder* soght"—*ib.* G.

E-re, *erst*. The root of *e-re* is the adverb *ā*, *ever*.

In O.E. we find *se ærra* = the former, *se æftera* (the after) = the latter.

In the thirteenth century we find *ærra*, *ærrer* = former. O.E. *Muc.*, p. 173.

Af-ter, latter, second (compare *after*-thought), is from *af* = *of*, *off*.

Fir-st is the superlative of *fore*. See § 117, p. 96.

For change of vowel see § 83, p. 63, § 91, p. 72.

Hind-er, from *hind*, as in *behind*. *Hinderest* occurs in Chaucer.

Inn-er, from *in*. In the thirteenth century we find *innerest*.

Neth-er, from *neath* in *beneath*. *Nethereste* is used by Chaucer (*Astrolabe*, p. 4).

Ove-r is from the root *ove* (O.E. *ufe* = up), in *above*. Wicliffe has *overere* (a double comparative)

As late as the seventeenth century *over* and *upper* are opposed to *nether*

"The *upper* part . . . shutteth close upon the *nether*"—HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 241.

"Also as it is in the parties of the grete worlde that they beeth so i-ordeyned and sette, that the *over-meste* of the *nether* kynde touche the *nether-meste* of the *over* kynde, as oysters and schellefisch . . . in bestene kind."—*Trevisa* II, p. 181

Upp-er, from *up*. *Upperest* and *overest* are found in the fourteenth century.

Utt-er, out-er, from *out* (O.E. *ut*).

117. Superlatives in *m*.

The O.E. *for-ma* (cp. Lat. *pri-mu-s*) = 'first,' from the root *fore*, survives in *for-m-er* (comparative form with superlative sense), and *for-m-ost*.

"The *forme* yere."—PALLADIUS, p 71, l 291

"The *formast* barn that sco him bare"—*C Mun* 'W' p 38

"The *first* child that ever scho bare"—*Ib* G

"Of alle oure *former* fadris that evere were or aren"—*Babees Book*, p 47.

The suffix **-most** (O.E. *m-est*), contains the superlative endings **-m** and **-est**, as in *in-m-ost*, *ut-m-ost*, *up-m-ost*, *hind-m-ost*, &c.

Further-more (*forther-over* in Chaucer), is simply a compound like *ever-more*

For the Indefinite Article see Numerals, **One**.

For the Definite Article see Demonstrative Pronouns.

NUMERALS.

118. Numerals may be considered under the three following divisions, **Cardinal**, **Ordinal**, and **Indefinite Numerals**.

I.—Cardinals.

One = O.E. *an*, M.E. *an*, *a*, *on*, *oon*, *o*, *oo*

The Indefinite Article *an* preserves the original form of the numeral. The *n* falls off before a con-

sonant, and becomes a (Cp. "*nune* and *my*." A = one in "all of a size," &c.

"Alle salle than be *ane* in company,
And als a saule and a body "

HAMPOLE'S *P. of C.*, p. 228

An in seventeenth century writers is used before words beginning with h

'Yea, I may say of Gardiner, that he had *an* head, if not *an* hand, in the death of every eminent Protestant"—

FULLER, *Church History*, ed 1845, iv p. 183

In the phrase "such *an* one," one must have had its M.E. pronunciation oon

None and No are the negatives of an and a.

Two, twain (O.F. *deux*, *zwei*)

Three (O.F. *trois*, *drei*)

The root is *thru* or *thar*, 'to go beyond,' 'cross' Cp. Lat. *trans* and *trans*.

Four (O.E. *feower*, *fether*, cp. Lat. *quatuor*) has lost a th.

Five (O.E. *fif*), has lost a nasal. Cp. Lat. *quinque*, Gr. *πέντε*.

Nine (O.E. *nigon*, M.E. *neghen*).

A g representing an older v has been lost. Cp. Lat. *novem*.

Ten (O.E. *tȳn*, *tēn*).

Ten has lost an h or g. Cp. Gothic *taihun*, Lat. *decem*. The original form therefore was *tehen*, or *tegen*. Cp. twenty (O.E. *twen-tig*).

Eleven [O.E. *endlif* (*endleof*), *allefne* (*ændlefen*)].

e = en = one; lev = lif (perhaps) = ten.

Twelve (O.E. *twelf*).

two = twa = two; lve = lif = ten.

Sometimes *l* = *t*, and *f* = *g*, hence *lif* = *tig*, (in O.E. *twentig* = *twen-ty*)

Some philologists say that *lif* is from O.E. *lafan*, Goth. *laibjan*, to leave; O.E. *lāf*, Goth. *lauba*, a remnant. Hence *eleven* = *one over ten*, *twelve* = *two over ten*.

The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by the suffix *-teen* (O.E. *týne*) = ten. Those from 20 to 90 are formed by suffixing *ty* (O.E. *tig*) = ten.

Hund-red. In O.E. we find *hund*, and *hūrt-tēntig* = 100. *Hund* signified *ten* originally.

Hundred and thousand are substantives (originally neuter).

119. Distributives express how many at a time, as, *one by one*, *one and one*, *by twos*, *two each*, &c.

By twos. In O.E. the dative *bi twodem* would be used.

In the fourteenth century we find *be hundredes* &c. Chaucer, *Astrolabe*, pp 11, 19, has *by on*, *by two*, &c. *By* and *by* = *one by one*; *on by on* is used by Lydgate.

120. In Multiplicatives the cardinal number is placed before the greater numeral, as *eight hundred*.

They may be expressed (1) by the English suffix *-fold*, as *two-fold*. Cp O.E. *an-fald* = simple; (2) by the Romance suffix *-ple* (*-ble*), double (*duple*), treble (*triple*).

In M.E. we find *-double* used as a suffix instead of *-fold*.

(3) by the word *times*, as "three times one are three;" (4) by the adverbial form, as, "twice two," "thrice four."

Both O.E. *begen* (masc.), *ba* (neut.) Cp. O.E. *twegen*, two.

² In the thirteenth century we find the neuter form (*bey*, *ba*, *bo*, *boo*) more common than the masculine *beyn*.

Both contains the root *bo* (or *ba*), and the suffix *-th*.

In O.E. we find *ba* joined to *two* (two), as *bātwa*, *butwa*, *butu*. Cp. our "both two."

In the thirteenth century we find a plural *bathen*, or *bothen*, and a genitive plural *ba-re*, and in the fourteenth century *bothen* and *bothers* are used as genitives.

II. Ordinals.

121. The Ordinals, except first and second, are formed from the cardinal numbers by the suffix *-th*, as four-th, fif-th, six-th, &c.

In O.E. fifth, sixth, and twelfth, were *fiftha*, *sixta*, and *twelftha*. In O.E. *th* had, probably, only the *flat* sound in *bathe*, and therefore could not follow a sharp mute.

Third = O.E. *thridde*, M.E. *thridde*

In seventh, ninth, tenth, thirteenth, . . . nineteenth, an *n* has crept in through Northern forms of Norse origin. Cp. *tynthe* = tenth.

In eigh-th (O.E. *eaht-otha*), a *t* has disappeared

First is the superlative of *fore*, see § 116, p. 95.

Second, Fr. *seconde*, Lat. *secundus*, has replaced the O.E. *other*.

O.E. *other* = one of two, *thæt ān* = the first; *thæt other* = the second. In M.E. these became (1) *that oon* and *that other*, (2) *the ton* (toon, tone), and the *tother*.

"Tus pilers *thai* mad, o tile *the tan*,
The *tother* it was o merbul stan"

C. *Munda*, C p. 96, ll. 1532-3.

"Two pileres *thai* made, of til *that oon*,
That *other* was of marbul stoon."

16 T.

III. Indefinite Numerals.

122. All. O.E. *eal*, *eall*, Genitive plural *al-ra*, E.E. *al-re*, M.E. *aller*, *alder*, *alther*. See § 111, p. 88.

In the Lowland Scotch dialects we find *allers*, cp *bothers*, § 120, p. 99.

Many. O.E. *manig*, *maneg*, is another form of the root *magh* in *more*. See § 116, p. 94.

In O.E. we have *fela*, *foola* (M.E. *fele*) = many.

Many (O.E. *mænigeo*), a crowd, is a substantive in some expressions, as, "a great *many*."

"O thou fond *many*"

SHAKESPEARE, 2 *Hen. IV.* l. 3.

Few. O.E. *feðwa*, *feð*, E.E. and M.E. *fa*, *fo*, *fon*, *fone*, *fewe*, *few*, O.E. *lyt* = few.

CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns.

123. The **Pronouns** are among the oldest parts of speech, and consequently have undergone much change, so that their original forms are greatly altered. Notwithstanding all this they have preserved more relics of the older inflexions than any other part of speech, as case-endings in **hi-m, he-r, ou-r, &c**, suffixes marking gender in **it, what, &c**. They also illustrate the substitution of one demonstrative for another, see remarks on **she, they, &c**. p. 109. They show how neuter forms may take the place of the masculine and feminine, as in **this, &c.**; how one case may replace another, as in **you** for **ye**; how the singular may take the place of the plural, as in **you** for **thou**; how relative pronouns are lost and replaced by interrogatives; how new plurals replace older ones in **others, selves**; how impersonal pronouns are formed, as, **somebody, &c**.

124. When a pronoun stands alone, as the subject or object of a verb, it is said to be used substantively; when it modifies a noun it is said to be used adjectively. The Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, and Indefinite Pronouns have often this double use.

125. The classes of Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Demonstrative, (3) Interrogative, (4) Relative, (5) Indefinite.

I PERSONAL PRONOUNS

I Substantive.

126. The Personal Pronouns have no distinction of gender. There are two persons, the person who speaks, called the *first* person, the person spoken to, the *second* person

The person or thing spoken of is sometimes called the *third* person (he, she, it) It is properly a demonstrative pronoun and is inflected like other old demonstratives for gender, as well as for number and case

He = that man, she = that woman, it = that thing.

In E. E. the definite article or demonstrative *the* is used instead of *he* before *that* "mihtu Lauerd is *the* that Juliana on levetht² = mighty Lord is *he* that Juliana believes in — (*Ful.* p. 65) "Ich am *the* that spec" = I am *he* that spake — (*ib.*)

127 THE PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

Modern English.	M E	E E	O E
Nom. I	I, ich, ik	ic, iĥ, ih	ic
Gen.		min	min
Dat. me	me	me	me
Acc. me	me	me	mec, me

Plural.

Nom. we	we	we	we
Gen.		ure	ûser, ûre
Dat. us	us, ous	us	ûs
Acc. us	us, ous	us	ûsic, ûs

128. THE PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

Modern English.	M E	E E	O E.
Nom. thou	thu, thou	thn	thu
Gen.		thun	thñ
Dat. thee	the	the	the
Acc. thee	the	the	thec, the

Plural.

Nom. ye, you	ge, yhe, ye	ge	ge
Gen.		eoure, ewr, sure	cower
Dat. you	sou, yhou, you, yow	ew, cw, eu	cow
Acc. you	sou, yhou, &c.	ew, ow, suw	cowic, cow

There was a dual of the first and second personal pronouns in O.E., which died out before A.D. 1300

129. Remarks on the pronouns of the first and second person.—

(1) **I.** The guttural has fallen off, as in many words originally ending in *c* or *ch*. See § 37, p. 64.

Traces of an older form *Ich*, (which still lives on in the south-west of England), occur in old dramatic writers, as, *chill* = *ich* will (Shakespeare, *King Lear*) In early English we find *icham*, I am; *ichabbe*, I have, *ichlich*, I will not, *ichlich*, I had not.

"*Icham*, a gentylman of much noble kynne,

Though *liche* be clad in a knaues skynne"

HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure*.

"*Ich* am an old man."

A.D. 1565, AWDELEY, *The Fraternity of Vacabondes*, p. 8.

(2) **Me** (dative) is still in use before impersonal verbs, *me-thinks*, *me-seems*, &c.; after interjections,

"woe is *me*," "well is *him*;" to express the indirect object, *to me* or *for me*,

"Tell *me* the truth," "he plucked *me* ope his doublet"—
SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Caesar*, I 2

In M E. we find more frequent traces of the dative, especially with the adjectives *loof* (*loof*), *loth*, &c. and the verb *to be*.

"And lever *me* is be pore and trewe."

C. MUNDY, T 1 4375.

Traces of this idiom occur in the dramatic writers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

The verb *had* often replaces the older *were* (subjunctive).

"*Me* had rather"—*Rich* II iii 3.

= M E. *Me* were lever.

"*You* were best take my coxcomb."

King Lear, I. iv.

"*You* had best"—*Id.* II p 208.

"*Him* had ben lever to be syke"

FABYAN, p. 270.

"*You* were best hang yourself"

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 305.

In the sixteenth century the *nominative* case replaces the *dative* as, "thou wert better," &c. for "thee were better," "we had best," = "us were best" Bacon uses "I think good," for "me thinks good"

"Better *I* were distract"

King Lear, iv. 7.

We no longer use *mine*, *thine*, *ours*, &c. as genitives, but only as possessive pronouns. In M E. we find a trace of the genitive in such expressions as, "mangre *my*" (*owres* &c.) = in spite of *me*, (*us*, &c.) "*oure* aller" = all of *us*, &c.

See ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, § 133.

(3) Thou has been replaced by *you*, except in the poetical and religious language.

From the fourteenth down to the seventeenth century, we find *thou* used to express (1) *familiarity* towards friends, (2) *superiority* towards inferiors; (3) *contempt* or *anger* towards strangers.

"We maintain that *thou* from superiors to inferiors is proper, as a sign of command, from equals to equals is passable as a note of familiarity, but from inferiors to superiors is not proper."

(4) *Ye*, although the true nominative, has been replaced by dative or objective *you*. In the English Bible, the older use of *ye* as nominative, and *you* as dative or objective, is always carefully observed.

"*Ye* have not chosen me, but I have chosen *you*"
John xv 16.

In Sackville, Shakspeare, and Milton, we find *ye* (in an unaccented position) sometimes used instead of *you*, in the objective case²

"V. *ye* have chosen me, but I have chosen *ye*"
"I have chosen *ye*"

130. THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.—SINGULAR.

Masculine

Modern English	M	E E	O E
Nom. <i>he</i>	<i>he, ha, a</i>	<i>he, ha</i>	<i>he</i>
Gen. <i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
Dat. <i>him</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>him</i>
Acc. <i>him</i>	<i>him, (hine)</i>	<i>hine, him</i>	<i>hine</i>

² *You* does not appear as a nominative, in the written language before the sixteenth century. In the spoken language it was perhaps probably pronounced like *ye*, or the *yea* in *yea*. Cp. *thank ee* = thank ye = thank you, *look ee* = look ye.

Feminine.

Modern English.	M E	O E	E E
Nom. she	heo, sco	hi, heo, scæ	heo
Gen.	sche, she	hire, here	hire
Dat. her	hire, hir, here	hire, here	hire
Acc. her	hire (hi, heo)	hi, heo, hire (hise, his)	hi

Neuter

Nom. it	hit (it)	hit (it)	hit
Gen.	his (hit)	his	his
Dat. it	him (hit, it)	him	him
Acc. it	hit (it)	hit	hit

PLURAL

Nom. they	hi, thei, thai	hi, heo, thei, thai	hi (hig)
Gen	heore, here, her, thair, their	hire, heore, here, thesse	hira (heora)
Dat. them	hem, hem, the m	him, heom, hie m	him (heom)
Acc. them	tham	hem, thessm (hise, his)	

§31. Observations on the Pronoun of the Third Person:—

(1) In Old English there was only one stem, *hi*, from which *he*, *she*, *it*, and their cases were formed. The modern declension contains three stems, *hi*, *sa*, *tha*.

(2) *He*. In Middle English we find *ha* and *a* = *he*. Cp. "quoth *a*."

" 'Rah, tah, tah,' would *a* say; 'bounce,' would *a* say; and
away again would *a* go; and again would *a* come."
—*Hm* IV. PART II. ll. 2. 303.

(3) **Hi-m** (*dat.*) contains a real dative suffix *m*.
Cp. *who-m*.

(4) **Hi-m** (*acc.*). The old accusative was *hi-ne*, which began to go out of use in the thirteenth century, and by Chaucer's time had wholly disappeared in the Midland dialect.

"Heo *hine* bitauhte knyhtes þat duden *him* muchele
schonde,

- þe knyhtes þet *hine* ledden bitauhten *him* þe rode."

= They delivered him to knights that did to him great
shame,

The knights that led him delivered to him the cross.

O.E. Miscell. p. 49.

(5) **She** replaces the older *heo*, which lasted as late as 1387. It is an altered form of the Old English feminine definite article *seo*, or *sio* (Icelandic *sú*).

"Heo huste hwat *heo* mende, *heo* wes of wytte poure "

= She knew not what she meant, she was of wit poor

O.E. Miscell. p. 85.

(6) **He-r** (*dat.*) contains a dative (*fem*) suffix *-r*, (*-re*).

He-r, (*acc.*) originally dative, has replaced the old accusative *hi* or *heo*

"Heo cuþeþ *hi* well sone."

= She will show herself very soon.

O.E. Miscell. p. 118.

"He ber *heo* on his schuldre."

= He bore her on his shoulder.

Id. p. 49.

(7) It has lost an initial *h*. The final *t* was originally a suffix of the neuter gender, as in *tha-t*, *wha-t*. Cp. Latin *i-d*, *illu-d*, *istu-d*, *quo-d*.

It is often employed in O.E. where we use there.

"It es na tung may tell."

C. Mundi, p. 84.

"It *hen* the deueles disoures "

Piers Plowman, B vi. 56.

(8) It (*dat*) has replaced the true form him.

(9) They is the old nominative plural of the definite article. It replaced the older form *hi* or *heo* in the beginning of the thirteenth century in the dialects of the North and North East of England, under the forms *þei*, *þess*, *þai*.

"Ic nele neuer þe vorþake, and so *hi* seyden alle.

þo *hi* hedden al þis iherd *heo* were ful son "

= I will never forsake thee, and so they said all ,

When they had heard all this they were full sorry.

O E. Miscell. p. 41

(10) The-m (*dat.*) is the dative plural of the old definite article and replaces the demonstrative *hem*.

The-m (*acc*) was originally a dative and replaced the older forms *hi*, *heo*, *hem*; the true accusative is *they*, O.E. *thā*.

O E Miscell p 33

"And [he wile] makie *heo* unfere "

= And he will make them unbold.

Ib. p 75.

"And right anon *they* ^{*} token *here* way to the court of Melibe, and token with *hem* some of *here* trewe frendes."—

CHAUCER, ed Morris, iii. p 193.

In the dramatists, *'em* is not a corruption of *them*, but of the older *hem*

(11) The following table shows the origin of *she*, *they*, &c. :—

DEFINITE ARTICLE—SINGULAR

Nom.	Masc.	Fem	Neut
	se (E. E. the)*	sco, so	thæt
	the	she	that

PLURAL

Nom.	Poss	Dat	Acc.
thā	thāra	thām	thā
they	their	them	

Obs The following examples show the demonstrative character of *they* = those (nom and acc)

"For *they* carles garre syke a dinne."

WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 118.

"And *tha* bandes of fyre salle never slake"

= And those bonds of fire shall never slack.

HAMPOLE, *P of C.* l 7177

"But *thas* prophetis so thyn ar sawn"

= But those prophets are so thinly sown

BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, iv 685.

"For he had drede of *thas* thre men"

= For he had dread of those three men

Id. vii. 185.

"*Thas* thre traitouris he has slane."

= Those three traitors has he slain.

Id. vii. 222.

* In O E *the* was only used as an indeclinable relative. In E. E. *the* (masc) and *theo* (fem.) were used as demonstrative pronouns instead of O.E. *se* and *sco*.

" Ane of *thas* That com for to sla the kyng."

= One of those that came to slay the king

BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, vii. 212.

Tho is another form of *tha* and *then*.

" þo weore þeos—

þat weoren in þe pynen of helle "

= They were those

That were in the pains of hell.

O. E. *Miscell* p 232.

" Yf ye wille after this do to me so

As ye have done, ye shalle have alle *tho*" (*them*=couns)

OCCLEVE, *De Reg.* 166.

" And *tho* that cannot (beat their husbands), they will
never let

Their tongues cease." . . .

HAWES, *P. of Pl* p. 136

II. Reflexive Pronouns.

, 132. The simple personal pronouns *me*, *thee*, &c. may be used reflexively, as, "I repent *me*," "get *thee* hence," "sit you down."

The word *self* is usually added to them.

Singular.—Myself, thyself, yourself, himself, herself, itself.

Plural.—Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

Self (O.E. *silf*), was at first declined as an adjective along with the personal pronouns, nom. *ic silfa*, gen. *min silfes*; dat. *me silfum*, acc. *me silfne*.

Between the nominative of the personal pronoun and the word *silf*, the dative case of the pronoun was inserted, as: *ic me silf* = I myself, *thu the silf* = thou thyself; *he him silf* = he himself; *we us silfe* = we ourselves; *ye ew silfe* = you yourselves;

hi him self = they themselves. So we could say *God self* and *God him self*.

These forms are emphatic rather than reflexive.

In the thirteenth century we find the *possessive* pronoun replacing the *dative*, as, *I mi self, thu thu self*, &c. instead of *I me self, thu the self*. Cp. *himself, themselves, itself, oneself*.

Probably *self* had already come to be considered a noun; it certainly was often so treated from the fourteenth century downwards:—

"As *this self* lhyth"

CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, pt. I. sec. 21

"*Myself* hath been the whip."

CHAUCER, *C. T.* I. 5757

"Thy manner is to muse and [to] devyse,
So that sometime *myself* may carry me
Myself knoweth not where; and I assure ye
So hath *myself* done now."

HEYWOOD, *The Play of the Wether*.

Cp. the use of "*myself*," &c. for "*I myself*," &c.

When *self* was fully established as a noun, it dropped its old plural *e*, and took *s*, as *ourselves*, &c.

For some time it was without a plural, as *ourself*, *themself*, &c.

One's *self*, (or more properly *oneself*), is quite a modern form. In Elizabethan English we find a *man's self* = *one's self*.

In OE, *ana* (the nom. of *an*, one,) was used like *self*. In M.E., we find *one* used for *self* with the possessive pronoun, as, "*be myne one*," by *myself* (*Mark Arden*, ed. Brock, p. 125) = "*by me one*."

An old meaning of *self* was *same*. Cp. "the *self* truth" (Becon), and "self-same."

"The *same self* tyme"

BALE'S *Works*, Park Soc p 23.

"For other ruffians, as their fancies wrought,
With *self-same* hand, *self* reasons, and *self* right,
Would shark on you"

SIR T. MORE, *ed.* Shak. Soc. p 27.

III. Adjective Pronouns.

133. The Adjective Pronouns, sometimes called Possessive Pronouns, were formed from the genitive case of the personal pronouns, and were declined like ordinary adjectives.

In modern English the possessive pronouns, though only used adjectively, are identical in form with the old genitives of the personal pronouns.

Sing.—Mine, my; thine, thy; his, hers, its.

Plural.—Our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs.

Mine, my; thine, thy. The original forms were *mine* and *thine* (O.E. *mīn*, *thīn*). The final *e* is no inflexion, and only marks the length of the preceding vowel.

The *-n* in *mine* and *thine* is an old genitive suffix.

My and thy are formed from *mine* and *thine* by the loss of *n*, as *no* from *none*, *a* from *an*.

Mine and thine are occasionally used before a noun beginning with a vowel, or *h*; but this usage is confined to poetry and the *solemn* style.

'It is very common in the Bible, and in our old dramatists :—

"Give every man *thine* ear, but few *thy* voice."

Hamlet, I. 3

"Conduct me to *mine* host."—*Macbeth*, I. 7.

Sometimes *mine* and *thine* are used when they follow the substantive, as,

"*Lordyng myne*"—*Gest Rom* p. 32.

"Master mine"

Merry Wives of Windsor, 1, 1 163.

Hi- is a true genitive of the root **hi**.

He-r (O.E. *hi-re*), contains a genitive suffix fem. -r.

Its (O. E. *his*) This is quite a modern form, not much older than the end of the sixteenth century. It does not occur in the Bible, it was not used by Spenser, rarely by Shakspeare and Bacon, but is more frequently employed by Milton, and had quite established itself in Dryden's time as the regular form. The true genitive of *it* is *his*.

[illegible]

In the fourteenth century we find hit = its. This form was kept up as late as the seventeenth century.

"Of its own accord."—*Levit* xxv. 5.

"If knighthood shall do worse . . . it shall fright all *it* friends."

BEN JONSON, *The Silent Woman*, II. 3

The own = *its own*, occurs⁹ as early as the fourteenth century, and was in use in the sixteenth century.

"And albeit their trumpery be built up, and reared as high as the sky, yea even in a moment, and as it were of the own self, falleth it down again."—*Translation of Jewel*, ed. Jelf, p. 453.

SINGULAR.

Masculine

	M E	E E.	O E
Nom.	the	the	se
Gen.		the-s, tha-s	thæ-s
Dat.	the	tha-n, the-n	thæ-m, thæ m
Acc.	the	tha-n, tho-n	thæ-ne
Inst.	the	the	tht, thē

Feminine

Nom.	the	theo, the	seo
Gen.		the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Dat.	the	the-re, tha-re	thæ-ra
Acc.	the	tha, theo, tho, th	

Neuter

Nom	} the, that	} the-t, tha-t	} thæ-t
Acc			
Gen.			
Dat			

like the masculine

PLURAL

Nom	the, tho, tha, tha:	tha, theo, the	thā
Gen	the	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thā-ra, thæ-ra
Dat.	the, (tha, tho,	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thā-m, thæ-m
Acc.	tha:)	tha, tho, the	thā

In the second period the article is flexionless in Northern writers

The old form *tho*, the plural of *the*, is used as late as Warner's time. *They* is occasionally found in Tudor English as the plural of *the*

The, before comparatives, as, "*the more the merrier*," is a remnant of the old instrumental case *thi*. Cp O.E. *thi mare* = Lat. *eo magis*. It must be parsed as an adverb when used in this way.

136. **That** was originally the neuter of **the**. In Northern dialects it replaced the demonstrative *thuk*, and was used before nouns of all genders. Its plurals were (1) *tho* (or *tha*) the pl. of the def. art.; (2) *thos* (or *thas*) the old plural of **this**.

The **t** in **that** is the old neuter suffix Cp. **it**, **what**.

Those (O.E. *thās*), was at first the plural of **this**. It had established itself, as early as the middle of the fourteenth century, as the plural of *that*.

137. **This** was originally neuter. As late as 1387 we find **thes** (masc), **theos** (fem), **this** (neuter), Lat. *hic, hæc, hoc*.

This is more emphatic than *the*, and was originally equivalent to *the-the* Cp. Fr. *ce-ci, ce-là*.

These (O.E. *thæs, thās*, E.E. *thas, theos, thos, thes, these*, M.E. *thes, thees, thise, these*).

The final **e** in *these*, marks the length of the preceding vowel, it is not an inflexion.

The form *these* in M.E. may have been a new plural formed from *this*, and therefore commonly spelt *thuse*.

This and **that** sometimes replace the former and the latter (O.E. *se ærre* and *se æftera*) see § 116, p. 95.

This usually refers to the *latter* of two things mentioned, **that** to the *former*.

"*This*
So
And"

POPE, *Essay on Man*, II, 2

138. **Such** (O E. *swiċ*, E.E. *swiċh*, M.E. *swiċ*, *swiċh*, *swiċh*, *siċh*, *such*) is a compound of *so* (O E. *swā*), and *like* (O.E. *lic*). **Such like** is pleonastic.

We find compounds of *such* in *some such* and *none such*.

139. **Thilk** (O E. *thylic*) = the like. Cp Lat *ta-lis*.

The like is used often as a substitute for the older *thilk*.

140. **Ilk** (O E. *ylc*) = that like, same.

141. **Otherlike** and **other the like** are found in the seventeenth century.

"Chaffe, straw and *otherlike* mullocke "

HOLLAND, *Pliny*, 601

142. **So** (O E. *swā*), is often used as a substitute, for *such*.

"I am wiser than *so*" *te* a baby —FORD.

143. **Same** (M.E. *same*, Gothic *sama*). In the oldest period *same* is a conjunction, as *swa same swa* = the same as; *sam—sam* = whether—or.

Same is joined to **the**, **this**, **that**, and **self** (e.g. **self-same**). See § 132, p. 112)

144. **Yon, yond, yonder** (O E. *geon*, Goth. *jains*, Ger. *jener*) = that, *ille*.

"Near *yonder* copse "

GOLDSMITH, *Deserted Village*, l 136

"Beside *yon* straggling fence"—*Id.* l 193

Yon is a derivative from the demonstrative root *ge* (or *ja*).

In O E. *geon* = *ille*; *geond* = *illic* and *trans*.

Yonder (adv.) is in Gothic *jaindre*.

In M E. we find *yon* a like *such* a, *each* a, &c., from which probably has arisen *yond-er*.

The Scotch still use *yon* substantively.

"*Yonder's* a bad man."

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER II p 400

"*Yon* er thieves"—*C Mundi*, C l 4590

"*sonder* ar thieves"—*Id.* F

"*sondir* be thieves"—*Id.* T.

- " Bote take we him ute of *son* den,
And selle we him to *some* chapmen "
C *Mundi*, G ll 4185-6
- " Take we him out of *sonder* den
And sel him forth to *some* chapmen "—Jb F
- " Take we him out of *that* den
And selle we him to *those* chapmen "—Jb T.

III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

145. The Interrogatives are **who**, **which**, **what**, **whether**, with their indefinite compounds **whoever**, **whatever**, **whichever**.

146 **Who** (masc. and fem) is only used of persons. Its neuter is **what**.

		O E	
Masc. and Fem.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom	who	hwā	hwæt
Gen	whose	hwæes	hwæes
Dat	whom	hwam, hwæm	hwæm
Acc	whom	hwone, hwæne	hwæt
Inst		hwī	hwī
	Neut.		
	what		
	whose		
	what		
	what		
	[why]		

		M E.	
E E		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Masc. and Fem.		wha, hwo, wo,	what, wat,
Nom	hwa, wha, wa	ho, quo	huet
Gen	hwas, whas, was	whas, whos, wos, hos	as masc.
Dat	hwam, whan,	whom, wham, wom	as masc.
Acc	hwan, wan, hwam, wham	whom, wan, won	what, wat, huat
	Neut.		
	hwat, hwæt, what, whæt		
	as masc		
	as masc		
	hwat, whæt, what		

Who-se was originally of all genders. It can be used absolutely, as, "*whose* is the crime?" The **s** in *whose* is a genitive suffix, as in *hi-s*.

Who-m is a dative like **hi-m**. It is now also accusative, the older acc. *hwone* having been replaced by it in the thirteenth century.

147. What was originally neuter (like *that*), and never masc. or fem. It got its present usage as early as the beginning of the thirteenth century in the Northern dialects.

What for = *what sort of*.

"What's he for a man"

PELLE, ed Dyce, p 383

148. Whe-ther (O.E. *hwather*, M.E. *whether*, *wher*), which of the two.

"God cupid, or the keeper, I know not *whether*,
Unto my cost and charges brought you thither."

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight
of the Burning Pestle*, l. 2.

"*Whether* of them twain did the will of his father."

Matt. xxi. 31.

For the suffix **-ther**, see *Three* § 118, p. 97.

We find in the seventeenth century *whether-so-ever*, in the fourteenth *whether-so*, *whether-ever*.

149. Which (O.E. *hwilc*; E.E. *whulc*, *whulch*, *wuch*; M.E. *wich*, *wuch*, *which*, *whilk*) contains the **wh** of *who*, *what*, and **-lc** = O.E. *lic* = like. Cp. *qua-lis*.

"Tele us *hwuch* is helle"—O.E. *Hom.* l. p. 249

= Tell us *what* hell is like.

"Moyses seide, Lord *wuch* is þu face, let me hit
seo"—Vernon MS

IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

150. The Relative Pronouns are **who**, **which**, **what**, **that**, **as**.

In the oldest period, **who**, **which**, and **what**, were not relative, but interrogative pronouns, **whose**, and **whom**, were established as relatives as early as the thirteenth century, but **who** was much later in getting a relative force, and did not come into common use before the end of the sixteenth century.

151. **Who**, as a relative, is not recognized by Ben Jonson, who speaks of "one relative *which*."

In 'Palladius on Husbandrie,' A. D. 1420, we find *who* used as a relative with a neuter antecedent.

Who (= he who, whoever) replaced the E. E. *the the*, or *the that* = he that.

"*Who* steals my purse steals trash."—*Othello*, III 3 15.

In this sense **who** = *quisquis*, is an indefinite pronoun.

In M. E. *the* is sometimes joined to **whose** and **whom**.

Who (and its cases) are often followed in M. E. by *that*.

152. **Which** at present relates only to neuter antecedents, but this is comparatively a modern restriction.

"Our Father *which* art in heaven."

In M. E. **which** is frequently joined to *the*, *that*, *as* —*the which*, *which that*, *which as*, &c.

153. **That**, originally the *neuter singular* relative, now agrees with singular and plural antecedents of all genders.

That, during the twelfth century, began to supply the place of the *indeclinable* relative *the*, and in the fourteenth century it was the ordinary, though not the

only relative. In the sixteenth century, which often supplied its place, and in the seventeenth century, **who** was frequently employed instead of it. At a later period (Addison's time), **that** had again come into fashion, and had almost driven **who** and **which** out of use.

That (O.E. *ðætte* = *ðæt þe*), is sometimes used in the sense of **that which**, or **what**.

"We speak *that* we do know, and testify *that* we have seen."
St. John, iii 11

154. **What** = *that which*, refers to singular and neuter antecedents. Its true genitive is **whose**.

"Nebuchadnezzar, the king, made an *image* of gold, *whose* height was threescore cubits" — Dan iii 1. See Milton's *Par. Lost*, Bk. i l 2.

What that, that what, what as, are archaic compounds

155. **Who-so, what-so, who-so-ever, what-so-ever, which-so-ever**, are indefinite, like the Latin *quisquis, quicumque*.

O.E. *swā hwa swā* = E.E. *who-swa, who-se*, M.E. *who-so*, O.E. *swā hwylc swā* = *which so, whichever*.

In the sixteenth century we often find **what-som-ever** = M.E. *what-sum-ever*, *sum* = *as*, so is Danish

"To *quat* contre *sum* that thou wend"

C. *Mundi*, C. 1 1149.

"To *quat* contre *so* thou wend."

16 G.

156. **Who-ever, what-ever, which-ever**, are relative and interrogative. They do not occur in the oldest English.

157. **As** (O.E. *eall-swa*, E.E. *alswa, alse*, M.E. *ase, als, also*), has a relative force after *such, same, that*.

Such — as = O.E. *swyle — swile* = *such — such*. E.E. *swile — als*.

Other-some = *some others*, is used by Shakespeare in the *Comedy of Errors*, iii. 2

'Framing unto some unwholesome sorts plaisters, and applying *other some* where no sore is"—HOOKER, v 11

In O E and E.E. *sum* was declined like the strong declension of adjectives, see § 112, p. 89

In M E. we find pl. *sume, summe, some*

As late as the fourteenth century we find *some* used in apposition with a pronoun or noun, as *sume we* = some of us

For *we* = *we*, on the following notions of the copulation —
 I
 I

Compounds of *some* are *somebody*, *something*, *someone*, *somewhat*.

Somebody seems to have got into the language through the use of *body* for *wight* (person)

"*A bodye* thynketh *himselffe* well emended in his substance and ryches, to whom hath happened some good goubbe of money"—ERASMUS, *Apophthegms*, englished by Udall, ed. 1542, p. 142

No *body* occurs in *Piers Plowman*—B. xvi. 83, p. 292

Something has in a great measure replaced *somewhat*. This usage is as early as the thirteenth century

Some one arose in the early part of the fourteenth century, and replaced *sum man*, it is also used where in M E. *oon, one* = *some one* was employed.

All and some (M.E. *al and sum*) = *all and one*, *all and singular*, is used by Dryden.

"—you must march both *all and some*"—PREELE, *Edw. I.*

In the sixteenth century it often appears as *whole and some*, *all or some*.

Sometimes we meet with a redundancy of indefinites —

And the nature of all creatures is contained in *some certain*

"
 "
such other like —PILKINGTON, p. 20.

162 **One** (O.E. *æn*, M.E. *on*, *oon*) is the numeral one with extended usage. It has a genitive *one's*, and a plural *ones*.

In the O E and M E, *one* was declined according to the strong declension. See § 112, p 89.

It has various usages —

(1) In "*one* says" it replaces the O E *man*, M E *me* (Ger *man*, Fr. *on*). This use is as early as the fifteenth century.

(2) It has an indefinite sense like the Latin *quidam*, Greek *τις*, especially before proper nouns, as, "*one* Simon a tanner" (*Acts* ix 43) This use is found in E.E. See *St Juliana*, p. 5.

"*One* in a certain place testifieth"—*Heb* ii 6

"Also *oon* told hym that *oon* of his frendes hadde ispoke euil by hym"—*Trevisa*, iii 317.

See *Piers Plowman*, B xx 157, 161, p 374

(3) It is equivalent to *some one*, see *King Lear*, i. 3.

(4) It is also used as a noun = *person, thing* (M.E. *wight, thung*). This usage is found in the fourteenth century.

(5) It is used instead of repeating the noun.

(6) The *one* = *the first*. See § 121, p. 99.

(7) *One* = *the same*, as, "*is*'s all *one*," "*one* and the same"

For *one* we sometimes use *a man, they, you, people*

In M E *me* = *men*, is used for *one* (Fr. *on*); but with a singular verb

"The wyne also *thus* sayen hath that nature,
That vynes yf *me* brenne, or white or blake,
And kest hem into wyne, *me* may be sure"
The wyne colour after the vynes take."

PALLADIUS, *Husbandrie*, p 200

The expression as one that = M E as he that, E E as the that, as a what that; as thing that—See *Fulana*, pp 4, 5, 8, 20, 21

163 None, no = O.E. *nān* = *ne an* = *not one*.

No is formed from **none** by the dropping off of **ne**. (Cp **my** and **mine**) **None** is used absolutely, that is, without a following noun: "I have **none**."

In none other (*Acts* iv 12, *Deut* v. 7), we have the M E use of *none* for *no* before a vowel]

No one . . . one) but it evidently replaces M. b. *no man, no wight*. Compounds of no are nothing, nobody. Ford has nobody's else for nobody else's.

164. Aught = anything (O E. *awiht*, *awuht*,
o, l, o h ^. I c e t t e r y a b e r t e g g e n e 7
 I t t e r y a b e r t e g g e n e 7
 I t t e r y a b e r t e g g e n e 7

Naught (*n.*) 1. A zero; a cipher; a figure used to denote nothing or no value.
2. A person who does nothing; a worthless person; a scoundrel.
3. A state of being nothing; a condition of utter poverty or destitution.
4. A small mark or symbol, such as a cross or dot, used in mathematics or science.
5. A term used in chess to describe a piece that has been captured or removed from the board.
6. A term used in sailing to describe a vessel that is without sails or under way.
7. A term used in law to describe a person who is found guilty of a crime but has no punishment imposed upon them.
8. A term used in literature to describe a character who is devoid of personality or emotion.
9. A term used in philosophy to describe a concept that is completely abstract and lacks any concrete form.
10. A term used in religion to describe a state of spiritual emptiness or lack of faith.

Awhit is another form of *aught*. Cp *anywhit*, *everywhit*. As *not* = *nowhit* = *naught*. *not a whit* is pleonastic.

That nawight = *noght* = *not* is seen from the following versions of the same line.

—C Munds, C I 4396.

In the following passages *nowight* is replaced by *nothing*,
nothing.

"Ne sal thou *newgæt* thar-wit win"—*Id* C l 919

"Ne sal thou *naproge* thar-with wyn."—*Ib.* F.

What = ought, in

"The devil have they what else"

THE SITES, *O E. Plays*, ed Hazlitt, i. p. 428

Every-each is like *'no one*, a pleonastic expression, which arose when the origin of *every* was forgotten.—(See Burton, *Anat of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 601).

168. *Either* (O.E. *æghwæther*, *ægther*, & *hwæther*, *ðwæther*; E.E. *æther*, *aither*, *æther*, *other*, *owther*, M.E. *either*, *ayther*, *other*, *outher*), is an old comparative form (see § 148) containing the prefix *æ*, *ever*, and the suffix, *-ther*. It signifies "any one of two." Its negative is *neither*.

Either has a possessive form *either's*.

"Then *æther's* love was *æther's* life"

WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 57

"*Eytheres* will."—*Piers Plowman*, B xiii 348, p. 228

169. *Other* (O.E. *ðther* = one of two, second and other), contains the root *ō* = one, and the comparative suffix *-ther*. (See § 121, p. 99).

Other originally followed the strong declension of adjectives. Its plural was *othre*, when the final *e* became silent, a new plural *others* was formed.

Other for some time was used as a plural, both in M E and in the seventeenth century. Cp *other some* = *some others*

Another, *any other*, *none other*, *some other*, are forms that arose in the thirteenth century

Other the like = M E. *otherlike*, occurs in Hooker, v 1 3.

170. *One another*, *each other*, are sometimes called reciprocal pronouns, but they are not compounds. They love *one another*; they love *each other* = they love—*one* (loves) *another*; they love—*each* (loves) *the other*.

171. *Else* (O.E. *elles*), is the genitive case of an old pronominal root *el* = *after* (Cp. Lat. *alius*).

We find its pronominal character kept up in what else, O E. *alht hwæt*. Warner (*Albion's England*, p. 178) has *clawhat*, cp. *aught else*, *nothing else*.

Becon constantly uses *what other thing* for *what else*. So in Hooker, v. xx. 6

"For *what else* is the Law but the Gospel foreshewed?"

"What other the Gospel than the Law fulfilled?"

Other where = *elsewhere* in Hooker, v. xl, 12

Else is used substantively in the sense of *something else* in the following passage.

"What's that she mumbles? The devil's paternoster? Would it were *else*"—FORD, *Witch of Edmonton*, II. I.

172 Some demonstratives become indefinites. Cp. *this* and *that*, *such* and *such*; he knew not *which* was *which*; *she* and *she* in the Ayenbite, p. 54, *he* and *he* = one — another. — *Per's* and *Woman*, B p. 226, CHAUCER'S *Knight's Tale*, ll 1756—1761.

"This would, I have, and *that*, and then I desire to be *such* and *such*"—(Burton, *Anat. of Med.* ed. 1845, p. 185.)

[illegible]

⁴⁴ In with the polar preseth λe and λe ;

By hynde the maste begynneth *Æ* to fle."

CHAUCER, ed Morris, v p 296.

"Then was I dubbed as true precise,

And faithful by and by.

And none was compted boate enough

Save *Ac* and *Ac* and I — DRANT'S *Horse*.

See Palladius, *Husbandry*, p. 126, l. 610, Burton, *Anat. of Med* ed 1845, p. 8

173 Enough (O E *gendh*, E E. *inoth*, *inoz*, M.E. *inough*, *ynough*, *anough*, *inow*, *enogh*)

We sometimes meet with the plural, *enow*, *onow*, (M.E. *enow*, *onow*).

174 The words *sundry*, *livers*, *certain*, and *several*, have acquired more or less the force of indefinite pronouns.

"They had their *several* (= separate) partitions for heathen nations, their *several* for the people, their *several* for men, their *several* for women, their *several* for the priests, and for the high priest, alone their *several*."—
HOOKER, v xiv 1.

CHAPTER X.

THE VERB.

175 Verbs may be classified, according to their meaning, as **Transitive** and **Intransitive**

Transitive verbs express an action which does not terminate in the agent, but passes over to an object, as, "he *learns* his lesson." **Transitive** verbs are used **reflexively**; as, "he *killed himself*," "sit *thet down*," and **reciprocally**, as "they *helped one another*."

Intransitive verbs express an action that is confined to the agent, as, "corn *grows*." Some intransitive verbs, by the addition of a preposition, become transitive, as, "the man *laughs at* the boy," "he *talks of* himself." Sometimes verbs compounded with prepositions become transitive, cp. *come* and *overcome*, *speak* and *bespeak*, *go* and *forgo*, &c.

176 Some intransitive verbs have a causative form which is always transitive, as,

Intrans

fall

at

see

Trans

fell

set

raise

K

As we are not now able to form new causative verbs, we are often obliged to give a *causative meaning* to an intransitive verb, and it then takes an object; as, "*he flies his kite*," "*he ran the knife into his leg*." Intransitive verbs may take a noun of kindred meaning as object, as, "*he lived a good life*," "*he died a horrible death*."

177. Verbs used with the third person only are called **Impersonal verbs**, as "*me thinks*," "*it rains*," &c. These verbs were much more numerous in the older stages of the language. (See *Syntax of Impersonal Verbs*). •

178 The verb affirms action, or existence of a subject under certain conditions or relations, called **voice, mood, tense, number, person**. In some languages the verbal root undergoes a change of form to express these various relations.

Voice.

179. Transitive verbs have two voices, the **Active** and the **Passive**. When a verb is used in the **Active Voice**, the subject of the verb represents the actor, or agent, as, "*the lion killed the elephant*." A verb is said to be in the **Passive Voice** where the subject denotes the object to which the action is directed, as, "*the elephant was killed by the lion*."

In English we have no inflexions for the passive voice, as in Latin and Greek, but express the same notion by means of the passive ~~participle~~ and the verb *to be*. We have a very good substitute for the

passive form in the use of an indefinite pronoun for the subject of the verb; as, "*somebody killed the boy*" = the boy was killed, "*one knows not how it happened,*" = it is not known how it happened; "*they say,*" = it is said. We can also express the passive voice by means of the verb *be*, and a verbal noun, as, "*the book is printing*" (= "*the book is a printing*" = "*the book is in printing*") = "*the book is being printed.*"

The passive voice has grown out of reflexive verbs. The *r* in *amo-r* is supposed to be a corruption of the pronoun *se* Cp Fr *s'appeler*, "to be called." Of the Teutonic languages only the Scandinavian dialects have formed a passive voice by means of the suffix *st* = *sk* = *sik* = *self*, Lat *se*, we have instances thus in *bush*, "to prepare oneself," "to be ready," and *bask*

Mood.

180. Mood has reference to the manner or mode in which anything is predicated of the subject.

The Indicative mood makes a direct assertion, or asks some direct question about a fact, as, "*John has a book,*" "*Has John a book?*"

The Subjunctive mood expresses some condition or supposition, as "I may go, if the day *be* fine;" "Love not sleep, lest thou *come* to poverty," "*Had* I the book, I would give it to you," "Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in Him."

As the Subjunctive mood depends upon the construction of sentences, its peculiarities belong to Syntax. The Subjunctive is almost gone out of use; its place is supplied by auxiliary words.

The **Imperative** mood expresses a command, entreaty, desire, request, &c, as, "*follow me*," "*grant our request*"

In this mood we employ the verbal root without any inflexion. It has only one person, the second (singular and plural). In the oldest southern English the plural took the termination *-th*

Some later writers used the imperative mood for all persons. We find in the use of *let*, "*let me call*," "*let him call*." In old English *let* = cause. Formerly the subjunctive had the sense of the imperative, as in the following examples:

"But *fall* I first
Amongst my sorrows, ere my treacherous hand,
Touch holy things"

BEAUMONT AND FLEICHER, *The Maid's
Tragedy*, Act iii Sc i

"*Let* me see thee, *let* me see thee,
Let me see thee, *let* me see thee,
Let me see thee, *let* me see thee,
Let me see thee, *let* me see thee"

The **Infinitive** mood is an abstract noun, and has no inflexions for voice, mood, &c, as, "*to see*," "*to know*" See p. 164 for a fuller treatment of the Infinitive Mood

Participles are verbal adjectives, and always refer to some noun in the sentence. Many adjectives take a participial form in *-ing*, or *-ed*, or *-en*. See § 76, p. 59.

"Thou to the *untamed* horse
Dost use the *controlling* bit,
And here the *strayed* oar,
By *addled* hands *clenched* fast,

Still leapeth through the sea,
Following in wondrous guise,
The fair Nereids with their hundred feet."

PLUMPTRE'S *Oedipus at Colonus*.

A Verbal Noun in -ing (O.E. -ung), often corresponds to a Latin gerund, as "he thanked him for *saving* his life" Here *saving* is not a participle, because "*for saving*" represents an older, "*for the saving of*"

"Thonkyng him *for the saving of* his life"
Gesta Rom p 7

"In knowing of the tid of day"
CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p 19

"Concerning the means of *procuring* unity, men must beware that in the *procuring* or *munting* of religious unity, they do not dissolve and deface the laws of charity and of human society"—BACON, *Essays*, 3

Here *procuring* = the *procuring of*

be earlier periods these nouns in -ing were preceded by various prepositions—an, a, on, in, at, to

"He sent Ancus his sones *an hontyng*"
Trevusa, III 87

"We han a wyndowe a *wirkyng*"
Piers Plowman, B p. 34

"He fel *on slepyng*"
Generides, 201

"While it was *in doynge*"
Trevusa, III 97.

"While it was *in workyng*"
HARDYNG

"*At wyltyng* he sleugh his father."
Ib

"If she were going to *hanging*, no gallows should part us"

MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, II 3.

"Hou hue Absolon to *hongynge* brouhte"

Piers Plowman, C p 64.

These verbal nouns may take an adjective or a demonstrative before them. They may also be used like an ordinary noun as the subject or object of a sentence.

Tense.

181. Verbs undergo a modification to indicate time. These forms are called **Tenses**. In the oldest period the verb was inflected for the present and perfect tenses only.

There was in O.E. no distinct form for the future, its place being supplied by the present. Cp "he *goes* to town to-morrow." There were, however, traces of a past indefinite tense formed by the verb *was*, and the imperfect participle. The perfect and past tenses were expressed by one form.

In the thirteenth century we find the modern future expressed by the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. In the fourteenth century we find (1) the present imperfect (continuous) formed by the verb *be*, and the present participle, (2) the perfect expressed by the auxiliary *have* and the passive participle; as well as the emphatic form of the present and past tenses, with the auxiliary *do*.

The growth of new forms render a fuller classification of the tenses necessary. The three simple tenses, **Present**, **Past**, and **Future**, have four varieties, (1) indefinite, (2) imperfect, (3) perfect, (4) perfect continuous.

The fourth variety belongs only to the *Active Voice*

TABLE OF TENSES

Tense.	Indefinite.	Imperfect and Continuous.	Perfect.	Perfect and Continuous.
Present	I praise	I am praising	I have praised	I have been praising
Past	I praised	I was praising	I had praised	I had been praising
Future	I shall praise	I shall be praising	I shall have praised	I shall have been praising

For **I praise** and **I praised** we sometimes use **I do praise**, **I did praise**, which are mostly emphatic. (See **Do** under the heading, **Auxiliary Verbs**.) In the modern stage of the language verbs undergo change of form only for the **present** and **past** tenses.

Number.

182. Verbs are modified to express the number and person of the subject. There are two numbers, **Singular** and **Plural**; and three persons in each number, **First**, **Second**, and **Third**. Inflexions for number have all disappeared, except in the verb *to be*. The person-endings are preserved only in the singular number of the present and past tenses of the Indicative mood.

For the origin of the inflexions that mark person, see **Verbal Inflexions**, § 200, p. 159.

Conjugation.

183. Verbs are classified, according to their mode of expressing the past tense, into **Strong** and **Weak Verbs**.

Strong Verbs form their past tense by change of the root vowel; nothing is added to the root, as, **fall**, **fell**, **fallen**. All passive participles of strong verbs once ended in **-en**; but this ending has been dropped in very many passive participles of this conjugation.

Weak Verbs form their past tense by adding to the root of the present the letter **-d**, ~~or~~ **-t**. The vowel

e sometimes serves to unite the suffix -d to the root. The passive participles of Weak Verbs end in -d, or -t.

Verbs that have vowel change in the past tense, as well as the suffix -d, are not strong verbs. The vowel change in *told*, *bought*, *taught*, has not the same origin as that in strong verbs

The strong conjugation includes the oldest verbs in the language. Because this process of vowel change is no longer a regular one, we call these verbs *irregular*.

Very many strong verbs have disappeared from the language. many have gone over altogether to the weak conjugation, some have become weak in the past tense, others in the passive participle.

A few have lost their past tense and have taken the passive participle instead, as *bit* from *bitten* instead of *boot* (= he did bite), while others again have lost their old past participle, and have taken instead of it the past tense, as, *stood* for *standen*.

Strong Verbs.

ORIGIN OF VOWEL CHANGE IN THE PAST TENSE.

184 The oldest mode of forming the perfect tense in the Indo-European languages was by reduplication as, *πῑ-φύγα*, &c, Lat. *pe-pendi*, &c. We have only one verb of this class in modern English, the verb *did*. Cp. Lat. *dedi*.

In the oldest stage of the Indo-European languages the verb *hāt* was used to mean 'to call'. The Gothic *hāst*, shows the reduplication more plainly than the O.E. *hēt*. On comparing the Gothic verb *hāst* with the O.E. *heold*, and our *held*, we see that vowel change has

arisen out of an original reduplication ; but we are not able to trace all the past tenses of strong verbs to an earlier reduplicated form. Those that can be so traced form a class by themselves, which we shall call the *First Division*, and the remainder, the *Second Division*.

First Division.

185. The first division consists of two classes of verbs, (1) those whose passive participles preserve the vowel of the present, (2) those whose passive participles have vowel change.

186. DIVISION I—CLASS I

PRER.	PAST	PASS PART	PRER.	PAST	PASS PART
a, o, ea	e	a, o	ea, a, o	eo, e	ea, a
fall	fel ¹	fallen	fealle	feoll	feallen
hang	hung	hung	hange	hēng	hangen
hold	held	held, holden	healde	beold	healden
blow	blew	blown	blāwe	bleow	blāwen
know	knew	known	cniwe	cneow	cniwen
grow	grew	grown	grōwe	grew	grōwen
throw	threw	thrown	thrāwe	threow	thrāwen
crow	crow	crown	crāwe	creow	crāwen
	[crowed ¹]	[crowed]			
beat	beat	beaten	beāte	beot	beāten
gang	[went]	gone	gange	geong	gangen
sow	[mowed]	[mowed]	māwe	meow	māwen
		mown			
sow	[sowed]	sown	sāwe	seow	sāwen
hew	[hewed]	[hewed]	heāwe	heow	heāwen
		hewn			

(1) The following verbs once belonged to this class : flow, fold, low, leap, let, row, span, sleep, sweep, walk, well weep.

(2) As early as the fourteenth century we find weak past tenses of the verbs *know*, *blow*, *grow*, *leap*, *walk*.

(3) Fold. In the English Bible (*Nahum* x. 10) we find p. p. folden. Cotgrave has unfolden.

¹ The words in brackets are the ordinary forms now in use.

(4) Held, is an instance of a passive participle being replaced by a past tense. This arose through the dropping of *en* in holden, which left hold as the passive participle, in no wise differing in form from the present tense. Cp *stood* for *stand* = *standen*

(5) Hew retained its strong past tense as late as the sixteenth century.

"And (he) *hew* it al to smal peces."—*St. Juliana*, p. 85

And the yere folowyng Kyng Wyllyam *hewe* downe moche
of the wood"—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 250

Hewn and mown are mostly used as adjectives, as, "*hewn* stones," "*mown* grass"

(6) Hang The old preterite was heng (See Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 160) The past hung seems to have arisen from the M E form of the past participle hongen (pronounced like the *o* in *some*)

"Me þouste I saw a wyn-tre
On þis tre, on vche a bowze
Henge grapes þicke ynowze
Of þo grapes þat þere *hong*
In a coupe me þouste I wrong"

Cursor Mundi, T. l. 4413

Hardyng (*Chronicle*, p. 310) uses hong for hung (p. p.) :—

"On Sainct Andrewes day thei wer drawe and hong"

"With ropes were thou bounde and on the gallowe *honge*"

FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.

(7) Sew = *sawed*.

"An husband that *seu* god sed apon his land."—*Met. Hom.*
p. 145.

(8) Welk = *walked*

"A man *welk* thoru a wod his wai"—*Cursor Mundi*, *Edinburgh MS*

"And than we *welk* forth"—*Paston Letters*, ed Gardner,
vol. i. p. 111.

(9) Leap (lep) = *leaped*

"For which his hors for seere gan to turne,
And *lep* syde, and foundred as he *lep*."

CHAUCER, *Knights Tale*, l. 1828

(10) Flowed The O E *flæw* became in E E. *flow*, *flew*; in M E *flew* is used as the past of *fly* or *flee*

"The flood that *overflew* al the world."—CATGRAYE, p. 17.

(11) Slep = *sleep*

"Three daies *slep* he al on-on"—O E *Misc* p. 24.

(12) Wep = *weep*

"Swiche teares *wep* ure drihten"—O E *Hom. II* p. 145.

187 DIVISION I—CLASS II

PRES. I	PAST a, u, ou	PASS PART u, ou	PRES I	O.E. PAST a	PASS PART u
begin	began	begun	on-ginne ²	on-gana	on-gunnen
cling	clang [clung]	clung	clinge	clang	clungen
climb	clomb [climbed]	[climbed]	climbe	clamb	clumben
drink	drank	drunk	drince	dranc	druncen
run	ran	run	rinne, yran	ran, arn	runnen
swim	swam	swum	swimme	swamm	swummen
spin	span [spun]	spun	spinne	spanu	spunnen
sing	sang	sung	singe	sang	sungen
shrink	shrank	shrunk	since	sanc	suncen
sink	sank	sunk	scrince	scranc	scruncen
slung	slang [flung]	flung	—	—	—
sling	slang [slung]	slung	—	—	—
ring	rang	rung	hringe	hrang	hrungen
slink	slunk	slung	—	—	—
spring	sprang	sprung	springe	sprang	sprungen
sting	stang [stung]	stung	slinge	stang	stungen
swing	swang	swung	swinge	swang	swungen
wring	wrang [wrung]	wrung	wringe	wrang	wrungen
win	wan [won]	won	—	—	—
bund	bound	bounden [bound]	bunde	band	bunden
find	found	found	findē	fand	funden
fight	fought	fought	—	—	—
grand	ground	ground	grunde	grand	grunden
wind	wound	wound	—	—	—
e	o	o ²	e	ea	o
help	help [helped]	helpen [helped]	helpe	healp	holpen
melt	molt [melted]	molten [melted]	melte	mealt	molten
swell	[swelled]	swollen [swelled]	swelle	swael	swollen
burst	burst	bur-t	berste	beartt	bo-sten

² All these verbs had a plural form in a — *clunnen*, &c. = we cling

(1) To this class once belonged *bellow, burn, ding, delve, carve, milk, mourn, starve, swallow, stint, spurn, thrash, wink, yield*

Now *be, burn, shrunken, sunken*, are

(3) The forms in *u* (*spun, clung*) have arisen from the passive participle.

(4) The *ou* in *bound*, &c. stands for an older *o* or *a*. This *ou* is probably due to the *u* in the past participle which in M E. became *ou*; thus the O E *funden* = M E *founden*. Cp O E *cu, hu* = M E *cow, how* = Eng *cow, how*

(5) *Clomb* = *climbed*

"So *clomb* this first grand thief into God's fold "

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, iv 192

"Was it not he, that first did climb
The tree, and eat the fruit?"

(6) *Swal* = *swelled*

"And [he] *swalle* and become grete "

LA TOUR LANDRY, p 37.

"Hir thought it *swal* so sore about hir hert "

CHAUCER, *C T* l 6549

(7) *Dalf* = *delved*

"When Adam *dalve* and Eve span,

Who was then the gentleman?"

PILKINGTON, p 125, see *Piers
Plowman*, B vi 193

"Whenne thei be *dolven* in her den "

Babers Book, p 52

(8) *Halp* = *helped*.

"This good lady she *halpe* "

LA TOUR LANDRY, p 136.

"Those that be in hell cannot be *holpen* by it [prayer]."

GRINDAL, *Reu* p 34

- (9) Yald =
- yelded*

"He *yalde* ayeen the sight unto this good man."—LA TOUR
LANDRY, p. 102.

"He *yald* hym creaunt to Crist."

Piers Plowman, ed Wright, l 7810, B. xii. 193.

Surrey has the old past participle *yolden*; Fabyan has *yolded*.

- (10) Foughten =
- fought*
- (p p)

"This yere was the felde of Dykysmew *foughten*."—FABYAN,
p 683.

"On the *foughten* field"

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, vi. 410.

- (11) Malt =
- metled*
- .

"And the metalle be the hete of the fire *malt*"

CAPGRAVE, p. 9.

- (12) Dang =
- dinged*

"That thai suld tak kobille stanes,
And *ding* his teth out all at anes;
And when thai with the stanes hum *dang*,
He stode ay laghand tham omang"

MS Harl. 4196, fol 170.

- (13) Carl =
- carved*
- .

"And *carf* byforn his fader at the table"

CHAUCER, *Prol* l 100

"Tho was he *corven* out of his harneys"

The Knightes Tale, l. 1838.

- (14) Starf =
- starved, died*
- .

"—Kyng Capaneus

That *starf* at Thebes."

Id l 935.

- (15) Wonk =
- wonked*

"He *wonk*, and gan about hyme to behold"

Lancel of the Lark, l. 1058.

- (16) Burst (past) has come in through the old p p. *bersten*
or *bursten*. The true past is *brast* or *brast*.

"And uto as a brok it *brast* be stand."

Curser Mundi, l 6392.

188. *Second Division.*

DIVISION II.—CLASS I

			O E.		
PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
ea	o (a)	o	e	æ	o
(1) bear	bare, bare*	born	bere	bær	boren
break	broke,	broken	.		
* shar	brake*		score	sær	scoren
	[sheared]	shorn			
		[shærcæ]	sprece	spræc	sprecen
speak	spoke,	spoken			
	spake*		s cle	sæl	stolen
steal	stole	stolen	tere	tær	toren
tear	tore, tare*	torn	cume	com	cumen
(a) come	came	come			

(1) The old verbs *nim* (take), *quell* once belonged to this class.

(2) The O E *æ* became in M E, *a* (cp the archaic forms *bare*, *spake*, *brake*), and *o*

(3) The *n* of the *pp* in M.E. was often dropped in all dialects except the Northern. We find in Shakespeare many instances of these curtailed forms, as, *broke*, *spoke*, *stole*, for *broken*, *spoken*, *stolen*

(4) *Shear* The old past tense was *share* or *shore*

"First he *shar* a-two here throtes."—HAELOK, l. 1413.

189. DIVISION II — CLASS II.

			O E		
PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
i	a	i	i, e	æ, (ea)	e
(1) bud	bade, bud	bidden,* bud	bedde	bed	beden
give	gave	given	gife	geaf	gifen
lie	lay	lien,* lan	licge	læg	legen
sit	sat	sat	sitte	sæt	sæten
ea, (ee), e	a, (o)	ea, (et), o			
(a) eat	ate	eaten	ete	æt	eten
get	gat, got	gotten,* got	-gite	-geat	-geten
tread	trod	trodden, -	trede	træd	treden
		trod			
see	saw	seen	seo, seohe	seah	ge-sên
weave	wove	woven	wefe	wæf	wefen
—	woth	—	cwethe	cwæth	cweden
—	was	—	[wese]	wæs	wesen

Words marked thus * are archaic

shook = shaken (*Paradise Lost*, vi, 219), stood has taken the place of the p p standen, or stonden

(3) Sware for swore occurs in *Mark*, vi, 23. The a is not original, but probably arose through the M E *swor* = *swer*, which caused it to be classed with *spake*, *bare*, &c. Cp l 1618 in *Cursor Mundi*, where "he *swar* his ath" in Cotton MS (Northern dialect) = "he *swor* an ooth" in Trn. MS (Midland dialect)

(4) Bake. The old p p baken occurs in *Levit* ii 4

"myn hungir *bok* thi blisful breed"

POL *Rel Love Poems*, p 191.

"—benes and bren *ybaken* togideres"

Piers Plowman, vi B 184, p 102.

(5) Gnaw was once conjugated like draw, slay. In M E we find *gnow* and *gnew*; *gnew* was used late in the sixteenth century. The p p *be-gnawn* occurs in the *Taming of the Shrew*, iii 2.

"hat best *gnow* up al bidene"—*Cursor Mundi*, G l 6043

"So depe hi [rasours] *wode* and *gnowe*."—*St Juliana*, p 85.

(6) Heave. For heaved we sometimes find hove and heft

The O E pret was *hēf* E E *hef*, *heef*, *hef*, M E *hef*, *hove*

"She *hef* hur heued heyer"—CHAUCER, *Boethius*, l. 5141.

"Ure lafdi this dai was *hoven* into heuene."—O E. *Hom.* ii p 167.

(7) Shape. The old past tense shope, was in use in the sixteenth century.

"I *shoop* me into shroudes"

Piers Plowman, B. Prol 2.

"But at the last god *shope* a remedy"

HICKSCORNER, p 163, ed 1874.

The p p. occurs in *mis-shapen*, *ill-shapen*. See *Pr* h 5

(8) Grave. We have the old p p. as an adjective in "a *graven* image."

The verb *to grave* once signified *to bury*.

"In Ebron hur *grof* Abraham,
Thar first was *graven* hali Adam"

C. Mundi, G l. 3213.

(9) Lade We find as passive participle *loden*, *loaden*,
as well as *laden*

(10) Wash The old *p p* was retained very late in *un-*
washen

"Hir body *wesch* with water"

CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, l. 1425.

(11) Wax to grow Spenser has *wax* past, and *woxen* *p p*,
waxen = *grown*, occurs in *Gen* xix 13, *Lev* xxv 39

"þai stod þan still and *wex* no more"

Cursor Mundi, l. 1420.

191 DIVISION II—CLASS IV.

PRES	PAST	PASS PART	PRES	PAST	PASS PART
i (long)	o	i (short)	i	â	i
abide	abode	abode, abiden*	bide	bâd	biden
bite	bit	bitten	bute	bât	biten
drive	drove	driven	drife	drâf	drifen
chide	chode,*	chidden,	chide	châd	chiden
	chid	chid			
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid	ride	râd	riden
rise	rose	risen	rise	râs	risen
rive	rove [rived]	riven [rived]			
shine	shone	shone	scine	scân	scinen
shrive	shrove	shriven	scrife	scrâf	gescrifen
slide	slid	slidden, slid	slide	slâd	sliden
smite	smote, smut*	smitten	smute	smât	smuten
stride	strode	stridden	strithe	strâth	strithen
thrive	throve,	thriven,	—	—	—
	thrived	throve*			
write	wrote, wrît*	written,	write	wrât	writen
		writ*			
strike	struck	struck, stricken	strice	strâc	stricen
strive	strove	striven	—	—	—

Obsolete.

(1) To this class once belonged gripe, flite (strive), glide, reap, slit, spew, sigh, wreathe.

(2) The o in this class of verbs stands for an older a, which occurs in the archaic forms drawe (*Josh.* xvi 10, Spenser, *F Q* vi vii 12), strake (*Acts*, xxvii 17), strave (Surrey)

(3) But (cp. the old past tenses *rid*, *slid*, *writ*, *smit*), is borrowed from the pass. participle. The true form is *bot*, or *boot*.

"The serpent *doof* the grechounde greuously "

Geot. Rem 87

(4) Shone, abode, struck (p p) show how the past tense has replaced the older passive participle

"Till the sunne haveth *senen* "

= Till the sun hath shone

O E Mycell D I

" Yf he had ~~gorden~~ at home "

LA TOUR LANDRY, p 170

"Well stricken in years"

Luke 1:7, see *Ps* 144:4.

Shakespeare has

"Struck in years"—*Rick III* 1 1

(5) Wreathen sometimes occurs as the p p of wreathe, or wrethe.

⁴⁶ *Wreathen hair* 39

LATIMER, see *Exodus*, xxviii 14, 22, 24, 25

The ME past of *wrethe* was *wrooth* or *wroth*. In the sixteenth century we find *wrethe* used as a past tense

"He writte her necke in sonder"

STUBS, *The Anatomy of Abuses*, p. 67, ed. 1585

(6) "I" is a person who is a member of the same family as the person who is the subject of the will.

(7) $\frac{1}{2} \leq \frac{1}{2} \leq \frac{1}{2}$

(8) *Will of Palermo*, § 792

(9) "The vapour, which that of the erthe *glod* [glided]"
CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 10707.

(10) "And Jacob *chođz* with Laban "

Gen xxxi 36

DIVISION II.—CLASS V.

PRES	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
ee, oo	o	o	eo	ea	o
freeze	froze	frozen	freeze	froes	frozen
seethe	sod ^a	sodden, sod ^a	seethe	seeth	sodden
	[seethed]	[seethed]			
cleave	clove [cleft]	cloven [cleft]	cleave	clef	cloven
choose	chose	chosen	cease	ceas	coren
lose	[lost]	[lost] lorn, ^a	leese	leas	loren
		forlorn			
shoot	shot	shot, shotten ^a	scote	scēt	scoten
fly	flew	flown	steoge, fleohe	fleth	flogen

(1) Many weak verbs once belonged to this class, as, brook, bow, brew, chew, creep, crowd, dive, flee, fleet (float), lie lose, lock, greet, knot, reek, rue, shove, smoke, snow, suck, slip, tug

(2) Clave occurs in the Bible for clove (*Gen* xx 3)

Cloven has now only an adjectival force, as in "cloven foot."

"It [sea] clef [*clauē C*] and gaf him redi gate"

Cursor Mundi, G 1 6262

Cleave, "to cling to," is a weak verb, yet elave is found in *Ruth*, l. 14, as its past tense

(3) Lorn = *losen*, and forlorn = *forlosen*, are archaic forms. In the O E p p the s has passed into an r (cp *was* and *were*, &c)

"—After he had fair Una lorn."

SPENSER, *F* Q. 1 42.

"Thritti yeur es sibēn gan

pat i mi sun hād *losen* dere"—*Cursor Mundi*, C. l. 5363.

(4) Froren = *frozen*

"My heart blood is well nigh *froren* (frozen) I feel."

Ib Shep. Cal, Feb,

"—The parclīng air

Burns *fore* (= frozen) and cold performs th' effect of fire."

MILTON, *Par Lost*.

"A *froren* mur [wall]"—*O E. Miscell* p 151.

(5) Chosen has replaced the old p p coren

"For hir childe thenne sho him *ēhes*."

Cursor Mundi, T. l. 5643.

" He is to-fore alle othre *1-coren* "

O E Misc p 98

(6) Seethe In the Bible (*Gen xxv 29*), *sod* = *boiled* occurs as the past tense

" Wortes or other herbes . . .

The whiche sche schredde and *seeth* for hir lyvinge "

CHAUCER, *The Clerkes Tale*, l. 227.

" Some (fisch) thei solde and some thei *sothe* "

Piers Plowman, B xv 288

" *Ysothe* or ybake "—*ib* p 278

" I force not whether it be *sodden* or roast "

The Four Elements, p 35, ed 1874.

" Of all manner of dishes both *sod* and roast "—*ib*, p 25

(7) " Hit *snew* [snowed] to hem^{as} hit were floure "

Cursor Mundi, T 1 6381

192. Some verbs that haveⁿ now strong past tense or passive participle, were once weak¹

Pres	Past	Pass. Part.
betide	betid*	[betid]
dig	dug	dug
he hide	digged*	digged*
hide	hid	hidden, [hid]
rot	[rotted]	rotten
show	[showed]	shown
	[shewed]	[shewed, showed]
stuck	stuck	stuck
	stack*	—
strew	[strewe]	strown
spit	spit,* spat	spat, spitten*
saw	[sawed]	sawn
wear	wore	worn
	ware*	

The past tenses *betid*, *hid*, *spit*, *spat*, are only apparently strong. The M. E. forms *betid-de*, *hid-de*, *spit-te*, *spat-te*, (cp *sweat-te*, sweated) were weak.

* Forms marked thus * are *archaic*. Forms in brackets are weak.

193 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG VERBS *

Pres	Past	Past Part
abide	abode	abode
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke
	<i>awaked*</i>	<i>awaked</i>
bake	—	baken
	<i>baked</i>	<i>baked</i>
bear (bring forth)	bore, bare*	born
bear (carry)	bore, bare*	borne
beat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beholden, beheld
bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
bind	bound	bounden,* bound
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke, brake*	broken
burst	hurst	burst, bursten*
chide	chode,* chid	chidden, chid
choose	chose, chase*	chosen
cleave (split)	clove	cloven
	clave*	—
	<i>cleft</i>	<i>cleft</i>
cling	clung	clung
climb	clomb	—
	<i>climbed</i>	<i>climbed</i>
cling	clang	clung
come	came	come
crow	crew	crown
	<i>crowed</i>	<i>crowed</i>
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk, drunken
drive	drove, drive*	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

* The forms in italics are *weak*. Those marked * thus are *archaic*.

Pres	Past	Past. Part
fight	fought	foughten*, fought
find	found	found
fling	flung, flang*	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot	forgotten
	forgot*	forgot*
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
		froze, froze*
get	got, gat*	got, gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grave	graved	graven
en-grave		en-graven ¹
	engraved	engraved
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
	hanged	hanged
heave	hove	—
	heaved	heaved
help	—	holpen
	helped	helped
hew	—	hewn
	hewed	hewed
hold	held	held, holden
know	knew	known
lade	—	laden, loaden
	laded	laded
lie	lay	lain, lien*
lose	—	lorn, forlorn
	lost	lost
melt	—	molten
	melted	melted
mow	—	mown
	mowed	mowed
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid*
ring	rang, rang*	rung

Pres.	Past	Pass Part.
rise	rose	risen
rive	—	riven
	<i>rived</i>	<i>rived</i>
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
seethe	sod	sodden, sôd*
	<i>seethed</i>	<i>seethed</i>
shake	shook	shaken
shave	<i>shaved</i>	shaven, <i>shaved</i>
shear	<i>sheared</i> , shore*	shorn, <i>sheared</i>
shine	shone	shone
	<i>shined</i>	<i>shined</i> *
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*
shrink	shrank	shrunk
	shrunk**	shrunk
sing	sang, sung*	sung
sink	sank	sunk, sunken
sit	sat	sat, sitten*
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid, slidden
sling	slung, slang*	slung
slunk	slunk	slunk
smite	smote, smit*	smitten, smit*
sow	—	sown
	<i>sowed</i>	<i>sowed</i>
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken
spin	spun, span*	spun
spring	sprung, sprang*	sprung
stand	stood	stood
stall	stole, stale*	stolen
sting	stung, stang*	stung
sink	stank	stunk
stride	strode, strode*	stridden
strike	struck	struck
		stricken
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
	sware*	—
swell	<i>swelled</i>	<i>swollen, swelled</i>

Pres.	Past	Pass Part.
swim	swam, swum*	swam
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
tear	tore, tare*	torn
thrive	throve <i>thrived</i>	thriven <i>thrived</i>
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden, trod
wake	woke <i>waked</i>	— <i>waked</i>
weave	wove	woven
win	won, wan*	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung, wrang*	wrung
write	wrote, writ*	written

Weak Verbs

194. The strong conjugation comprehends all primitive verbs, to the weak belong all derivative and borrowed verbs.

The weak conjugation is sometimes called the regular conjugation, because the formation of the past tense of weak verbs by means of the suffix *d*, is the ordinary method now in use. The method of forming the past tense by reduplication and by vowel change, is quite obsolete. Children and uneducated persons often make the strong verbs conform to the weak conjugation, and say *seed* for *saw*, &c. We have done exactly the same with regard to many old verbs, as, *shoved* for *shof*, *brewed* for *brew*, &c.

195. Weak Verbs form their past tense by means of the suffix *-d* or *-t*.

In old English we find that this ending had a longer form *-de*, as, *Ic ner-e-de I saved*. This *-de* represents a more primitive *dede* = *did*, which is the past tense, (formed by reduplication) of the verb *do*.

I loved = *I love-did*; *thou lovedest* = *thou love-didst*, &c.

196 The suffix -d is united to the root by the connecting vowel -e, as, lov-e-d, command-e-d.

(1) The connecting vowel, though preserved in writing, is dropped in pronunciation, except when the verbal root ends in a dental. Thus we loved, praised, thanked, are pronounced lov'd, praiz'd, thank't; but in commanded, and lifted, the -ed has, necessarily, its full pronunciation.

The verbs of this class in O E had the radical vowel *short*

For the reason of the change of d to t, see § p. 63, 45.

197. The passive participles also end in d or t. This suffix has not the same origin as the d of the past tense.

198 The following verbs have no connecting vowel, and are sometimes called *contracted* verbs:—

(2) *a* Before the addition of the suffix -d, the radical vowel is shortened

Pres	Past	Pass Part
hear	heard	heard
shoe	shod	shod
flee	fled	fled

b If the root ends in d, the suffix -d is dropped, and the radical vowel is shortened

feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
read	red	red

In the O E the past tenses of *a* and *b* were the same. cp O E.

	Inf	Past	Pass Part
<i>a.</i>	hȳr-an (hear)	hȳr-de	hȳr-ed
	fēd -an (feed)	fēd-de	fēd-ed
<i>b</i>	lād-an (lead)	lād-de	lād-ed

Flee was originally strong, see p 140, *meēt*, *met*, *met* has conformed to *lead*, &c Cp O E. *mētan*, *mēt-te*, *mēt-ed*.

the pass. participle, as, *radde*, *shrodde*, *sette cutte*, &c. We have now longer forms for some of the M E. shorter ones; cp. *reste* = *rested*; *wette* = *wetted*, &c. O E. *scyl-de* = *shielded*; *styllte* = *stilted*.

(4) The suffix -t replaces d after p, f, s, ch, v. The radical vowel, if long, is shortened.

Inf	Past	Pass Part.
creep	crept	crept
weep	wept	wept
kiss	kist	kist
lose	lost	lost
pitch	pight	pight*
leave	left	left
cleave	cleft	cleft

The v in *leave*, *cleave*, *deceive*, was originally f. In M E. *crept*, *wept* in the past tense were *crepte*, *wepte*. and also *crep*, *wep*, (strong forms)

(5) Verbs ending in ld, nd, rd, changed the d of the root into t, and the tense suffix is dropped

build	built	built
gild	gilded, gilt	gilt
bend	bent	bent
send	sent	sent
gird	girt	girt

The t in the past tense of *built*, &c, stands for an original d + de, which became de, then te, and, lastly, t. This last change took place before the formation of the

the uncontracted, with slightly different meanings, as, *gilt* and *gilded*, *bent* and *bended*, *blent* and *blended*.

In O E. we find only the long forms of the p p, as, *gyrd-ed*, *send-ed*, &c

(6) Some few verbs have vowel-change with the addition of d or t in the past tense.

(a)	tell	told	told
	sell	sold	sold
(b)	seek	sought	sought
	teach	taught	taught

The change of vowel in these verbs is not the same as that in the strong verbs. It is the present that has changed. The root of tell is *tal*, which we preserve in *tale*, and *tal-k*. Cp *sell* and *sale*. Between the root and the infinitive suffix there was once an *t*, which turned the *a* to *e*; thus, root *tal*, whence *tal-en*, modified to *tel-en* or *tell-en*. Cp *man*, *men*. The *o* in *told*, *sold*, represents the older *a* of *tale*, *talk*, which was never modified by the lost suffix *-t*.

The *t* in *sought*, &c., is due to the sharp *k* or *c* in *seek*. Under the influence of *t*, the guttural has become *h*, or *gh*.

In the seventeenth century we find *rought*, *raught*, *straught*, the past tenses of *reck*, *reach*, *stretch*.

In M.E. we had *roughte* = *reched*, *raughte* = *reached*, *straughte* = *stretched*; *laughte* = *latched*, *sensed*.

The verbs of this class were in O.E. contracted in past tense and pass part.

199. The following weak verbs have some peculiarities that need explanation.

Catch, caught, caught. This verb of Norman-French origin has followed the past tense &c. of E.E. *lacchen*, to catch, take, *lahite* (past).

Analogous to *caught* we find *fraught*, as well as *freighted*; and *distraught* for *distracted*, also *raught* = *reached* in Shakespeare, *Love's Labour's Lost*, IV 2, 41, *raught* also = *reft*. Cp 2 *Hen VI* II 3, 43.

"I *raught* his head from his body"

**Pierce Peneluse*, p. 82.

Clothe, clad, clad. In O.E. we find *clāthian*, (inf) *clāthode* (past), *clāthod* (pp), = M.E. *clothe* (*clēthe*), *clothede* (*clēthede*, *clēdde*), *clēd*, *clad*.

In M.E. we find *ledde*, *ladde*, = *led*, which has probably led to *clad* through *clēd* = *clēdde* = *clēthde*.

to go by, elapse. It is now used adverbially, as "a long time ago."

"By Saint Mary, and I wist that, I would be ago"

HICKSCORNER, p 167, ed 1874.

"Who, think you, brought here this figure?"

Certes, Lord Nature,

Himself not long ago"

The Four Elements, p 28, ed 1874.

Do, did, done, is a reduplicated verb, and of course belongs to the strong conjugation of verbs

The Sanskrit *dad* to place is cognate with English *do*, and its perfect *dadāu* is formed by reduplication, like English *did*.

Verbal Inflexions.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

200 Verbs are of two kinds, primary and derivative. All the strong verbs are of primary origin, the weak verbs are of secondary formation. To bear is a primary verb, because it is formed directly from the root, *bar*; but tell, as we have seen (p. 157), is formed from the nominal theme, *tale*, and is therefore a derivative verb.

The root is the significant element in the verb, to which are added endings to mark person, tense, or mood.

Sometimes the personal terminations are added directly to the verbal root, as in *do-st*, *do-th*, or by means of a connecting vowel, as in *lov-e-st*, *lov-e-th*.

The person-endings were originally pronominal roots placed *after*, and compounded with, the verbal

root or theme, as if we were to say love-I, love-thou, love-he, &c

201. The suffix of the first person singular, was originally *m* (for *mi*), which we still retain in the verb, *a-m*.

Cp Lat *su-m*, Gr *ei-µi*, Sansk *as-mi* = *I am*, Ger. *bin*, O H G *þmi*, O E (Northern) *beom*, *I be*

202 The suffix of the second person singular is *-st*; it was originally *-t*, which can be traced back to a suffix *-ti*, identical in origin with the root of *thou*. In the subjunctive mood this suffix is altogether lost.

The original *t* occurs in *shal-t*, *wil-t*, *ar-t*

and in the past tense of strong and weak verbs, the endings in the first and third persons singular have altogether disappeared

203. The suffix of the third person is *-th* (the root of *the*, *tha-t*) = *he*, *that*. As early as the eleventh century, in the Northern dialects, *th* was softened to *s*; but the former is now archaic

In the past tense of strong and weak verbs, the endings in the first and third persons singular have altogether disappeared

204 In modern English we have no plural suffixes.

In O.E. the indicative present plural of all persons ended in *-th* (originally the ending of the second person plural), as (1) *ber-a-th*; (2) *ber-a-th*; (3) *ber-a-th*.

The past indicative and the subjunctive (present and past) ended all their persons in *-n* (the original suffix of the third person plural); as, subjunctive present *find-e-n*; indicative past, *fund-o-n*, and subjunctive past, *fund-e-n*, or *fund-o-n*.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find the Southern dialect keeping *-th* for the present plural indicative, the Midland *-n*, and the Northern dropping all endings, or taking *-s* in the second and third persons. (See § 49, p. 31)

In O.E. the personal endings were often dropped when the pronoun followed the verbs, as *gā gē = gath gē* (go ye); *ete we = eten we* (eat we, let us eat)

The plural in *-en* was in use up to the middle of the sixteenth century, and a few examples are to be found in Spenser and Shakespeare, Hall, (contemporary with Milton) uses it in his Satires, *e.g.*

" And angry bullets *whistlen* at his ear "

vi 46

In O.E. the imperative plural ended in *-th*, as *num-ath, take ye*. In M.E. this ending was kept up in the Midland and Southern dialects, but not in the Northern dialect, where *-s* was used instead of it

205. Old English Conjugation of Verbs.

STRONG VERBS.

Active Voice

Nim-an, to take

Pres Inf	Past	Pass Part
nim-an	nam	num-en

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing	Plur.
1. ic nim-e	we nim-ath
2. thu nim-eſt	ge nim-ath
3. he nim-eth	hi nim-ath

Past Tense.

1. ic nam	we nam-on
2. thu nām-e	ge nam-on
3. he nam	hi nam-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense

1. ic nim-e	we nim-en
2. thu nim-e	ge nim-en
3. he nim-e	hi nim-en

Past Tense

1. ic nām-e	we nām-en ²
2. thu nām-e	ge nām-en
3. he nām-e	hi nām-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD

nim	nim-ath
Simple Inf	Pres. Part.
nim-an	nim-ende
Dative Inf	Pass. Part.
nim-anne	nim-en

WEAK VERBS.

Active Voice.

Infm.	Preterite	Pass. Part
ner- <i>i</i> -an (<i>save</i>)	nir-e-de	ner-e-d
luf- <i>i</i> -an (<i>love</i>)	luf-e-de	luf-e-d
hȳr-an (<i>hear</i>)	hȳr-de	hȳr-e-d

² The oldest form of the past subjunctive plural ending was -*on*, which afterwards became -*en*.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing	Plur
1 ner-e, lufig-e, hȳr-e	1 ner-ath, luſi-ath, hȳr-ath
2 ner-est, luſ-aſt, hȳr-est	2 ner-ath, luſi-ath, hȳr-ath
3 ner-eth, luſ-ath, hȳr-eth	3 ner-ath, luſi-ath, hȳr-ath

Past Tense

1 ner-e-de, luſ-o-de, hȳr-de	1 ner-e-d-on, luſ-o-d-on, hȳr-d-on
2 ner-e-de-aſt, luſ-o-de-aſt, hȳr-de-aſt	2 ner-e-d-on, luſ-o-d-on, hȳr-d-on
3 ner-e-de, luſ-o-de, hȳr-de	3 ner-e-d-on, luſ-o-d-on, hȳr-d-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1 } ner-e, lufig-e, hȳr-e	1 } ner-en, luſig-en, hȳr-en
2 }	2 }
3 }	3 }

Imperfect Tense

1 } ner-e-de, luſ-o-de, hȳr-de	1 } ner-e-d-en,
2 }	2 } luſ-o-d-en,
3 }	3 } hȳr-d-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing	Plur
2 ner-e, luſ-a, hȳr	2 ner-ath, luſi-ath, hȳr-ath

Simple Infinitive
ner-an, luſi-an, hȳr-an

Dative Infinitive
ner-anne, luſi-anne, hȳr-anne

Present Participle
ner-ende, luſig-ende, hȳr-ende

Passive Participle
ner-e-d, luſ-o-d, hȳr-e-d

Infinitive Mood.

206. The infinitive is simply an abstract noun. In O E the infinitive ending was *-an*, as *drinc-an*, *to drink*.

In the twelfth and following centuries, this *-an* became *-en* (*-in*) or *e*.

In Wicliffe, the suffix is for the most part *-e*; in Chaucer *-en* or *-e*. This *-e* after a time became silent, and the infinitive was only distinguished by the preposition *to* (except after an auxiliary verb), which at first belonged only to the dative or gerundial infinitive.

"As ha schulde *stupen* and *stracche* forth that swire (neck) "

Juliana, B p 73, A.D. 1210.

"In ful a bitter bath *bathen* ich schal naked "

O. E. *Miscell* p. 180, A D 1246

"In a bytter bath ich schal *bathe* naked "

Id. p 181, later version

"To *bakke*, and to *bosten* and *bere* fals witness "

Piers Plowman, B ii 80

The infinitive in O E was inflected for the dative by the suffix *-e*, and was governed by the preposition *to*; as, *tô gehyrann-e*, *to hear*. This is sometimes called the *gerundial* infinitive, in contradistinction to the simple or uninflected infinitive.

It was used chiefly to express purpose, it translated also Lat supines, gerunds, future participles, and *ut* with the subjunctive; as, "what went ye out *for to see*," "he is *to blame*," &c.

Latin supine in *-um*.

"Sôthlice tî eode se *sedere* his *sod to sôwenn*." 

= Verily outwent the sower to sow his seed.

Matt xiii. 4.

Latin periphrastic conjugation in *-rus* and *-dus*

"We selfe mȃgon scōthan thā thing the *tō sebihenne* and,
and brædan thā thing the *tō brædenne* and"
= We ourselves may seethe the things that are to be sodden,
and roast the things that are to be roasted

ÆLFRIC

"Hit is sceamu *tō tellanne*, ac hit ne thūhte him nān sceamu *tō dōnne*"

It is shameful to tell, but it appeared to him no shame
to do — *Chronicle*, A D 1052

Latin supine in *-u*.

"Ethe .. *tō findanne*"

= Easy to find

Ps. lxxvi. 16.

Latin genitive of gerund.

"... .."

i

j

Sometimes we find the dative infinitive used to mark the future.

"Thone calic þe ic *tō drincenne* hæbbe"

= The cup that I have to drink

Matt xx. 22

"Ic *tō drincenne* hæbbe."

= Lat *bibiturus sum*.

The gerundial ending not only took the same form as the simple infinitive, but it was often confounded with the present participle in *-ende*, or *-nde* (later *-inge*) in E E. and M E.

"Thenne begunne we to *flaonne* ant turneth to the luste, ant
this is al that we doth te *deruen* cristene men ant *eggin*
to then uele." — *Juliana*, p 44.

The synfulle (fasteth) for to *clensen* him, the rightwise for to
wisende his rightwisnesse" — *O E Hom.* II p 57

"And þe firste letter that was lused to wrytunge" *Trevisa*
 "Amonge the lettres that were lused to wrytunge and to
 spekyng" — *Ib.* III p. 249

That the participle in *-nde* could be confounded with the inf. in *-en* is seen in the following passage. —

"But thanke God of heuen for that he hath the *seuene*
 And so thou schalt, my doustur, a good hyf *lyuande*,"
Babees Book, p. 43.

Participles.

207. The present participle is formed by the suffix *-ing*, which has replaced M.E. *-inde*, *-ende*; O.E. *-end*.

The modern form *-ing* made its appearance in the Southern dialects in the latter part of the twelfth century, but the older form in *-ande* was retained in the Northern dialects up to a very late period (Cp Ben Jonson's *Sad Shepherd*, ii 2). Spenser has the archaic forms *glitterand* and *trenchand* for *glittering* and *trenchant*.

This change of *-inde* to *-ing* has caused great confusion between verbal nouns in *-ing* (O.E. *-ung*) and participles in *-ing* (see p. 133).

"Wommen seureth lyf, and *fedynde* to Kynges."

Trevisa, III, p. 183.

Here *fedynde* = *feeding* = *sustenance*. See O.E. *Hom.* II, p. 177, l. 23.

The Passive participle in the oldest period ~~was~~
 a prefix *ge*, which, after the Norman Conquest, was

reduced to (i, y, e) Milton has *yclept* = *called*. He wrongly adds it to a present participle in "star *y-pointing*."

The passive participle of all strong verbs ended in -en. In the thirteenth century we find n falling away; as, *ifunde* = *found*, *ibunde* = *bound*, very many of our strong verbs have lost their passive participles, and others at one time showed a tendency to do the same. Cp. *spoke* and *eat* in Shakspeare, for *spoken* and *eaten*.

The passive participle of weak verbs ended in -d; as, *lov-e-d*. The primitive form was -th, which is still preserved in *un-couth*, literally *unknown*; *couth* (O.E. *cuth*) being the p p. of *can*.

The adjectival character of the verbal suffixes -en (-n) and -ed, is seen by comparing them with the endings in *gold-en*, *silken*; *hot-headed*, or *2-eyed*, &c.

Anomalous Verbs.

208. **Be.** The conjugation of the substantive verb contains three distinct roots, *as*, *be*, *was*.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. am		1. are
2. art		2. are
3. is		3. are

Past Tense.

1. was		1. were
2. wast, wert*		2. were
3. was		3. were

* Obsolete

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1, 2, 3. be		1, 2, 3. be

Past Tense.

1, 2, 3. were		1, 2, 3. were
2. wert		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2 be		2. be
Infinitive		to be
Present Participle		being
Passive Participle		been

The oldest forms are .—

Pres. indic. sing.	1. eo-m, beo-m, beo
	2. ear-t, bis-t
	3. is, bi-th
Plural 1, 2, 3	{ sind, sind-on
	{ beo-th
	{ ar-on
Past indic. sing	1 was
	2 wære
	3 was
„ „ plur	1, 2, 3 wår-on
Pres subj sing	1, 2, 3 wes-e, beo, sî
„ „ plur	1, 2, 3 wes-en, beo-n, sî-n
Past subj sing.	1, 2, 3 wår-e
„ „ plur.	1, 2, 3. wår-en
Imper. sing	2 wes, beo
„ plur.	2. wes-ath, beo-th
Infín.	wes-an, beo-n
Act. part.	wes-enðe
Pass. part.	gewes-en

In the thirteenth century *sindon* (are) gives place to *beoth*, or *beth*. In M.E. *are* becomes very common.

Wesan (infin) seems to have dropped out of use in the twelfth century, leaving *beon* or *ben* as the ordinary form in use. About the same time *gewesen* (p.p.) disappeared, and a new p.p. *ibeon* (*ben*) came into use.

In M.E. we find the pres. part *be-ende* = *be-ing*.

Negative forms were common in the first three periods. Cp O.E. *neom* (am not), *neart* (art not), *nīs* (is not), *næs* (was not), *næron* (were not).

A-m (= *ar-m* = *as-m*) contains the root *as*, and *m*, the ending of the first person.

Ar-t (= *as-t*) has the old *-t* of the second person, as in *shal-t*, *wil-t*, &c.

Is (= *as* = *as-th*) has lost its suffix *-th*.

Are (= *ase*) represents the old Northern *ar-on*, and is of Scandinavian origin. It has altogether replaced the O.E. *sind*.

Was. This is the past tense of the strong verb, *wesan to be*. It has therefore no endings to mark the first and third persons.

Was-t. The true form would be *were* (O.E. *ware*) but *wast* arose in the fourteenth century, through the use of *was* as a second person in Northern writers of the thirteenth century.

"With ropes *were* thou bounde"

FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.

"How *were* thou than baptized?"

MERLIN, p. 428.

"Before the sun, before the heavens thou *wert*."

MILTON, *Par. Lost*.

Wer-t for *wast* has evidently been formed from the older *were* (= *wære*). It has established itself as a subjunctive form.

Were (= *was-en*) has, like *are*, lost its personal endings.

The root *be* was conjugated in the present tense, indicative, as late as Milton's time.

I be	we be	(bin)*
thou beest	ye be	"
he be	they be	"

"If thou *beest* he."—MILTON, *P. L.* l. 84.

"If thou *be'st* civil."

BEAUMONT and FLETCHER, *I.* p. 96.

"I think it *be* thine indeed."—*Hamlet*.

"We *are* true men, we *are* no spies, we *be* twelve brethren"
—*Gen.* xli. 32

"For you *be* as untrue as I."

HEYWOOD, *The Four P.P.*

"The Philistines *be* upon thee."—*Judges*, xvi. 9.

In M. E. *beth* and *bes* are used for the third pers. sing. indic.; and for the third pers. future, instead of our *shall be*.

209. *Worth = be.*

This verb occurs in the English Bible.

"Wo *worth* the day"

=woe be to the day—*Ezek.* xxx. 2

"Wo *worth* the faire gemme vertuelesse!

Wo *worth* that herb also that doth no boote!

Wo *worth* that beaute that is routheles!

Wo *worth* that wyght that tret ech under foote!"

CHAUCER, *Tr. & Cr.* II 49. ll. 344-7.

The O. E. *weorthan* (pret. *wearth*, p p. *worden*) *to become*, occasionally replaced *wesan* and *beon*, *to be*. In M. E. *worthe* = *to be*, as well as *to become*. In the third person *worth* = *shall be*.

"What shal *worthe* of us."—*M. Arth.* l. 1817, ed Farnivall

"For þu I conseilte alle þe comune to lat the catte *worthe*."

Piers Plowman, B Prol. l. 187

"To-morwe *worth* ymade þe maydenes bruydale."

Id. II. l. 42.

"This marie *worth* a slepe"—*Early Eng. Poems*, xxi. 38.

* Archaic

210. Can.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense

	Sing.	Plur.
1. can		1. can
2. canst		2. can
3. can		3. can

Past Tense

1. could	1. could
2. couldst (couldst)	2. could
3. could	3. could

In O.E. can was thus conjugated —

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres Indic	1 can, con 2 can-st 3 can	1 cunn-on 2. " 3 "
Past Indic	1. cu-the 2 cu-th-est 3 cu-the	1 cu-th-on 2 " 3 "
Pres Subj	1, 2, 3 cunn-e	1, 2, 3 cunn-on
Past Subj	1, 2, 3 cu-the	1, 2, 3. cu-th-on
Pass. Part	cu-th	Infia cunn-an

Can (1st and 3rd persons) has no personal suffix, because it was originally a strong form signifying *I knew*. Cp *shall, may, wot, &c.*

Could (= O.E. *cu-the*, M.E. *couthē, cou-de*) is a weak form. The letter l has crept in from false analogy to the past tenses of *shall* and *will*.

"And the Normans ne *couthē* speke tho bote her owe speche"

—*Spec of E Eng* i A 215.

The verb can (con) once signified *to be able, to know*.

211. Dare.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur
1. dare	1 dare
2. darest (dar'st)	2 dare
3. dares (dare)	3. dare

Past Tense

1 durst	1 durst
2 durst	2 durst
3. durst	3 durst

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

*Present Tense.**Past Tense.*

Sing 1, 2, 3 dare	Sing. 1, 2, 3. durst
Plur. 1, 2, 3 dare	Plur 1, 2, 3 durst

Old English conjugation of Dare

	Sing	Plur
Pres. Indic	1 dear	1. durr-on
	2 dears-t	2 "
	3 dear	3. "
Past Indic	1 dors-te	1. dorst-on
	2 dors-t-est	2. "
	3 dors-te	3. "
Pres Subj	1, 2, 3 durr-e	1, 2, 3. durr-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3 dors-te	1, 2, 3. dorst-on
Inf.	durr-an	

Dare. The root is *dars*, which appears in the past tense, *durst*.

The old 3rd person singular dare (M.E. *dar*) has given place to *dares*, the former being used only in

the subjunctive mood Cp. *Tempest*, III. 2, *Rich. II* v. 5.

Dare, to challenge, makes a new past tense and pp *dared*. Cp. *owe*, *ought*, and *owed*.

212. Shall.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present Tense</i>	
Sing	Plur.
1. shall	1. shall
2. shalt	2. shall
3. shall	3. shall
<i>Past Tense</i>	
1. should	1. should
2. shouldst, shouldest	2. should
3. should	3. should

Shall was conjugated in O E as follows —

	Sing	Plur
Pres Indic	1. sceal 2. sceal-t 3. sceal	1. sceal-on 2. " 3. "
Past Indic	1. sceol-de 2. sceol-d-est 3. sceol-de	1. sceol-d-on 2. " 3. "
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. scyl-e	1, 2, 3. scyl-en
Past Subj	1, 2, 3. sceol-ðe	1, 2, 3. sceol-d-on
Infin.	sculan	

One of the oldest senses of *shall* is *owe*.

"And by that feith I *shal* to God and yow."

CHAUCER, *Tr* and *Cr* 1 1600

"Voryef me thet ich the *ssel* "

= Forgive me that I owe thee.

Ayenbite, p. 115.

"Hu micel *scealt* thū."

= How much owest thou.

Luke xvi. 5.

"Ån, se hym *sceolde* tȝn thūsend punda."

= One that owed him ten thousand pounds

Matt. xviii. 24.

Another early meaning arising from the notion of debt is obligation, necessity, hence shall often signifies *ought*, *must*

"Be ðre æ he *sceal* sweltan."

= By our law he ought to die

John xix. 7.

"Men seyn, sche *schalle* endure in that forme "

MAUNDEVILLE, p. 4

"Thou *shalt* not steal "

"You *should* listen more attentively "

It must be recollected that shall is only a tense auxiliary, that is a sign of the future, in the *first* person. The following doggerel lines point out the distinctive uses of shall and will.

"In the first person simply shall foretells,
In will a threat, or else a promise dwells,
Shall, in the second and the third, does threat,
Will simply then foretells a future feat."

Grumm supposes that the original meaning of *shal* is *I have killed*, I must pay the fine or (*wergeid*) ; hence, I am obliged, I must. The idea of *failure*, *offence*, *guilt*, is seen in Sansk. *shhal*, *to fail* ; Lat. *scelus*, *fault*, *crime*.

A strange mingling of *should* and *owe* occurs in Fabyan's *Chronicle*, p. 257.

"Obedience that *he should owe* (= owed) to the see of Canterbury."

213. Will.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing	Plur.
1. will	1 will
2. wilt	2. will
3. will	3 will

Past Tense

1. would	1. would
2. wouldst	2 would
3. would	3 would

O.E. conjugation of will

	Sing	Plur
Pres Indic.	1. wile, wille	1 will-ath
	2 wil-t	2 "
	3 wile	3 "
Past Indic	1 wol-de	1 wol-d-on
	2 wol-d-est	2 "
	3 wol-de	3 "
Pres. Subj	1, 2, 3 wille	1, 2, 3 will-en
Past Subj	1, 2, 3. wol-de	1, 2, 3 wol-d-on
Infin.	will-an	Pres Part will-ende

The original meaning of will is *to desire, wish* (cp Lat. *volo*).

In M.E. we find a form *wol, will*, which still survives in *won't = wol not*. *Nill = will not*, occurs in *Hamlet*, v. 1; *Taming of the Shrew*, ii. 1.

In O.E. we find two weak verbs, *willan* and *willian*, *to desire, wish*. *Willan* survives in the verb *will, to desire, be*

willing, to exercise the will, which is conjugated regularly as an independent verb. 1 will, 2 willest, 3 willeth, wills, &c., past tense willed. But we often find in the older periods the two forms mixed up.

"Wel agte ihc *willen* hire to wif"

Fl. and Bl p 67.

"They ne shuld not *willen* so"

CHAUCER, *R.* 5923.

"Gif thu *wilt*, thu maht me geclænsian. Ic *wille*; beo geclænsod"

"If thou *wilt*, thou mayest make me clean. I *will*; be cleansed."—*Matt* viii. 2, 3

"Abraham *wold* in his lue,

That Ysaac had wɔd a wive"

Curior Mundi, G 1 3215.

"Abraham *willed* in his lyue,

That Isaac hadde weddede a wyue."

Is. T.

"For in evil, the best condition is not to *will*; the second, not to *can*"—BACON, *Ess* xi

The old *p p* *wold* for *wild*, or *willed*, was in use as late as the beginning of the sixteenth century

"The fomy bridel with the bitte of gold,

Governeth he ryght as himselfe hath *wolde*."

CHAUCER, *Leg. Didonis*, l. 284.

"How be it he myghte have entred the cytie if he had *wolde*. (= wished)—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 625

244. May.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. may	1. may
2. mayst, ma ^y est	2. may
3. may	3. may

N

Past Tense.	
Sing	Plur.
1. might	1. might
2. mightst, mightest	2. might
3. might	3. might

The oldest forms of *may* are —

	Sing	Plur
Pres. Indic	1 mæg 2 meah-t 3 mæg	1 mægon 2. " 3 "
Past Indic	1 meah-te	1. meah-t-on
Pres Subj	1, 2, 3 mæge	1, 2, 3 mæg-en
Past Subj	1, 2, 3 meah-te	1, 2, 3 meah-t-on
Infin mag-an	Pres Part. mæg-ende	Pass Part meah-t

The *y* in *may* represents an older *g* (cp. Ger *mogen*). Sometimes *g* passes into *w*, hence the M.E. *I mow*, *I may*, *I mought*, *I might*, pres. part. *mowende*, *mowynges*; pass. part. *moght*.

Mayst is a new form that arose in M.E. for *mih-t*, (See Chaucer's *Astrolabe*, p. 3).

May has the force of the Lat *posse*, to be able. It is the pretente of an old root *mag*, to increase, grow, which exists in *maí-n*, (O E. *mæg-en*), *migh-t*

"Helle gatu ne *mægon* ongeán þe"

= Hell's gates cannot prevail against thee

Matt xvi 18

"Thatt ifell gast *maðð* oferr tha

Thatt follshen barness thaewess"

= The evil ghost *was* power over those that follow
burns' habits

Orm 1 p. 279.

"If thou *maust* ony thing, help us"

WICKLIFFE, *Mark* ix. 4.

"Thai sallie *mow* passe aywhare⁹thai wille."

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 7993.

"As nere as they shall *mwne* (be able) "

Nat. MSS. I. 20, Hen. VII Quoted in

Earle's *Phil. of Eng. Tongue*, p. 284

"To lakken *mwynge* (power) to done yuel "

CHAUCER, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 124.

215. Owe.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
owe	1. owe
2. owest	2. owe
3. oweth	3. owe

Past Tense.

1. ought	1. ought
2. oughtest	2. ought
3. ought	3. ought

Inf. owe

Pres Part. owing

O E forms of Owe —

	Sing	Plur
Pres. Indic. 1	âh	1 âg-on
2	âg-e	2 "
3	âh	3 "
Past Indic. 1.	âh-te *	1, 2, 3 âh-t-on
Infinitive	âg-an;	Pres. Part. âg-ende, Pass. Part. âg-en.

In M.E. we find some new forms, as, *owest* (= *âge*); *ought* and *owed* (= *âgen*, p p).

The original meaning of *owe* is *to possess, have*, whence the secondary notion, *to have as a duty, to owe, to be under an obligation*.

Oughte is of course a weak past tense, and is now

used as a present and past tense to signify moral obligation.

When *owe* signifies to be in debt, it is conjugated regularly.

1. *Owe*, 2. *owest*, 3. *owes*, *oweth*, &c. ; past tense and p.p. *owed*.

Ought, in older writers, is used as the past tense of *owe*, *to be in debt*.

"Thu shuldest that thou *owtest*."

= Thou didst pay what thou didst *owe*

Ancren Riwle, p. 406

"He *owte* to him 10,000 talents"

WICKLIFFE, *Matt* xviii 24.

"One of his fellow servants which *owght* him an hundred pence"—BECON, I 154

"There of the Knight, the which that castle *owght*,
To make abode that night he greatly was besought."

SPENSER, *P. Q* VI iii 2.

See Shakespeare's *Henry IV* iii 3

Own is a derivative of *owe*.

Examples of *owe* as an independent verb —

"Hwæt dô ic that ic êce lif *âge*?"

= What must I do that I may have everlasting life?

Mark, x 17.

"*Ahte* ic gewæld?"

= Had I power —*Cæd* p. 23, l. 32.

"The mon the lutel *ah*"

= The man that has little —*La3* 3058

"To makien hure cwen of al thet he *owhte*."

= To make her queen of all that he possessed.

Ancren Riwle, p. 390.

"Steuen that the lond *auht*"

R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 3096.

"Ye shal *owe* and have everlasting life"

Gest. Rom. p. 29.

"I am not worthy of the wealth I owe."

Alf's Well that Ends Well, II 5.

"Owing her heart, what need you doubt her ear"

FORD

Owe as an auxiliary appears in *Lezamon's Brut*, l. 8289,

"he *ah* to don" = *he has to do, he should do*

"Evel *owe* no mon to do to other"

Cursor Mundi, T 1 1973.

216. Must.

Must was originally the past tense of the old verb, *motan* (Ger. *müssen*) *to be able, be obliged* it is now used in all persons and tenses, to denote necessity and obligation.

The O.E. forms are -

	Sing	Plur
Pres Indic. 1	môl	1 môt-on
2	môs t	2. "
3.	môt	3. "
Past Indic. 1	môste	1, 2, 3 môt-s-on

The old verb *mot* had the sense of *may, can, must*, &c; and *must* = *might, could*, &c

In the sense of *may*, *mot* is found as late as 1522 in *The World and the Child*.

"But, Sir Frere, evil *mot* thou the [thrive]"

O E Plays, ed Hazlitt, p. 257

Spenser occasionally employs it though it had become archaic in his time (see *Faerie Queene*, I 2, 37).

The *s* in *must* does not belong to the root, but was inserted to unite the suffix -*t* of the second person, and -*te* of the past tense to the root, *most* (second person) = *mot-s-t* = *mot-t*

O.E. *wâst* (knowest) = *wat-s-t*; *mo-s-te* (past tense) = *mot-s-te* = *mot-te*; O.E. *wiste* (knew) = *wit-s-te* = *wit-te*.

217. Wit.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. wot	1. wot
2. wot [wottest] ¹	2. wot
3. wot [wotteth]	3. wot

Past Tense

1. wist [wotted]	1. wist [wotted]
2. wist	2. wist [wotted]
3. wist [wotted]	3. wist [wotted]

Inf. to wit Pres. Part. witting [wotting]

The O.E. *witan* was thus conjugated:—

	Sing	Plur
Pres. Indic	1 wāt	1 wit-on
	2 wās-t	2 „
	3 wāt	1, 2, 3 „
Past Indic	1 wis-te	wis-t-on
Infin. wit-an.	Pres. Part. wit-ende.	Pass Part. wit-en. [M E <i>iwis-t</i>]

Wot was originally the perfect of the root **wit** (cp Lat. *video*, Gr. *οἶδα*, *I know*, from *ἵδεν*, *to see*), and meant “I have seen,” hence “I know”

Its infinitive to wit is used now only as an adverb = *namely*.

The pres. part. exists in **wittingly**.

For the presence of **s** in **wist**, see **must**, § 216, p. 181.

¹ The words in brackets are later formations

The pass. part. appears in *unwist*, *unknown*, *undiscovered* (Surrey), and in the old proverb, "beware of *had-I-wist*," i.e. "beware of saying regretfully *had I known*."

"Dead long ygoe, I *wote*, thou haddest bin "

SPENSER, *F. Q.* i 2, 20

See *Gen* xxi 26.

"But *wottest* thou what I say, man "

The World and the Child, *O.E. Plays*, i p 264.

"Again, who *wotteth* not what words were spoken against St Paul"—JEWEL's *Apol.* ed Jelf, p 3 See *Gen* xxxix 8

"He *wist* not what to say"—*Mark* ix 6

"And why he left your court, the gods themselves, *wotting* no more than I, are ignorant"—*Winter's Tale*, iii 2

"I do thee well to *wit* "

J HEYWOOD, *the Pardoner and the Friar*.

"Wouldest thou *wit* ?"—*Everyman*, *O.E. Plays*, i. p. 103.

"For, *wit* thou well, thou shalt make none attorney"—*Jb*

"I will handle my captive so,

That he shall not well *wot* wither to go "

Jack Fugger, *O.E. Plays*, ii. p 115.

218 *Do*, in "this will *do*," has the sense of the Lat. *valere*. It represents the O.E. *dugan*, E.E. *duhen*, *avail*, *be good*, (Ger. *taugen*) cp. *doughty* = *valiant*.

O.E. *dug-an*

Pres. Indic. Sing

1. *deah*

2. *dug-e*

3. *deah*

" " Plur.

1, 2, 3. *dug-on*

Past Indic. Sing

doh-te

"Ring ne broche nabbe se ne no swuch thing thet ou ne *deah* [= *deah*]"

= Have neither ring nor brooch, nor any such thing that is not good for you to have—*Ancient Runic*, p. 421

"And sau that hus dede litel *dohet* [= *did*, *availed*]."

Met. Hom. p. 149.

"What ~~does~~ me the dedayn."

= What avails me the displeasure.

Allit. Poems, p. 90.

"That nost ~~doed~~ bot the deth in the depe strems."

That nought availed, but the death in the deep streams.

Id. p. 47.

219. **Own** = *grant, confess*, has probably arisen out of O.E. *an*, (E.E. *on*) = *I grant, un-n-on, u-e grant*; O.E. *unnan* (Ger *gönnen*), *to grant*.

"Ich *on* wel that ge witen."

= I own well that ye know — *Kath.* 1761

"*sif* thu hit wel *unnet*."

= If thou well concealest it. — *Ancren Riwle*, p. 282.

220. **Mun** = *shall, must*.

"I *mun* be married a Sunday."

Ralph Roster Douster, before 1553

In the fourteenth century *mun* (*mon*) as an auxiliary verb = *shall, must*, was very common in the Northern dialects.

"I *mun* walke on mi way." — *Ant. Arb.* xxv 3.

"—than *mon* he gyf lyght

Als fer als the sone dose and ferrer"

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.

"Thai thocht that kynd him *mond* forbede"

= They thought that nature would forbid him.

C. Mundi, C. 1 1105

The original meaning of *mun*, *mon*, was *I have remembered; hence, I intend, mind*.

	Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
O.E.	ge-man	ge-munde	ge-munan (meminisc)
Icel.	mun }	munda }	muga (recordari)
	mun }	munna }	munu }
			mundu }

"He wolde mone"
 = He would remember

R OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 4811

221 The verb *need*, when followed by an infinitive, sometimes loses its personal ending -s, as "it *need* not be"

In O E. to *need* meant only to *compel*, *force*; but from a primitive *thurfan* (Ger. *durfen*) to *need*, was formed the following:

Pres. Indic. Sing	1	thearf	I need
	2	thearf-t	Thou needest
	3	thearf	He needs
„ „ Plur.	1, 2, 3.	thurf-on	We need, &c.

In M E. we find *thar* for *tharf*.

"Have thou ynough, what *thar* the recche or care"

= If thou have enough, why needeth thee reck or care

CHAUCER, *C T.* l. 5911

Auxiliary Verbs.

222. Auxiliary verbs supply the places of verbal suffixes to form voice, mood, and tense.

The passive voice is expressed by the passive participle, and the verb to be.

In O E. *weorðan* and *ðeian* were used with the passive participle to form the passive voice

Should and **would** are often used as signs of the subjunctive mood.

The use of *would*, as an auxiliary of the past subjunctive, is as early as the thirteenth century.

* Some explain *need* as subjunctive = *would need*, but cp. *me thinc* in M E. for *me-thinks*.

Let is a sign of the imperative mood, as, *let us go* = *go we*. See § 180, p 132. In M.E. *let* was used in the same way as *do* = *cause, make*.

The tense auxiliaries are (1) *have*, *had*; and *is*, *was* (with intransitive verbs) for the perfect tenses; as, "he *has asked*," "he *is come*."

(2) *Shall* and *will* for the future; but other shades of a future tense may be expressed by various modes, as, "I *am going* to see him;" "I *am about* to see him;" "I *am upon the point* of seeing him," &c.

(3) *Do* and *did* are used for forming emphatic tenses, as, "I *do see*," "I *did see*"

Do and *did* originally had a *causative* sense before another verb in the infinitive.

"Thou most *do me* it have"

= Thou must *cause me* to have it

Gamelyn, l 159

"And som-tyme *doth* Theseus hem to reste"

= And sometimes Theseus *makes* them to rest

Knights Tale.

In the fourteenth century *did* was not uncommon as a mere tense auxiliary.

"Summe goulden and summe *dude brenne*."

= Some yelled and others *did burn* — *O E Misc.* p. 224.

In M.E. *gan*, *can*, *con* (began) was used for *did*.

"Horn p 22.

"I *gan* his crowne take."

"Gret 101 *can* his frendes mak[e]"

Cursor Mundi, C. l. 3016.

"Criste of hym his crowne *con* take."

Pol. Rd. and Love Poems, p. 97, l. 121.

CHAPTER XI

Adverbs.

223 Adverbs are, for the most part, abbreviations of words or phrases, or cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

According to their origin or form, we may divide them into the following classes :—

224 I. Adverbs derived from Nouns and
Adjectives.

Genitive.—Need-s = *of necessity*, M E *nedes*, E E. *nêde* (instr.).

A-night-s, now-a-day-s, al-way-s, be-time-s, el-se (O E. *elles*), eft-soon-s, un-a-ware-s, on-ce, twi-ce, thri-ce, whil s-t, a-mid-s-t, a-mong-s-t, be-twi-x-t.

Twice = O E *twi-wa*, E E. *twi-e*, M E *twies*; thrice = O E. *thri-wa*, E E. *thrie*, M E *thrics*, -wa = -war = *time*; once, O E *æne*, E E. *ene*, M E. *an-es*, *on-es*, *an-s*, *on-s*.

The -st in *whilst*, &c represents an older -es(-s) Cp M E *whil-es*, *amidd-es*, *among-es*, &c.

Dative.—Whil-om (O.E. *hwil-um*). from *while* = *time*. Seld-om (O.E. *seld-um*) from O.E. *seld* = *rare*.

All adverbs ending in *-meal* once had the dative suffix *-um*. Cp O E. *lim-mæl-um* = *limb-meal*. The suffix *-um* formed distributives like Latin *-um*. Cp M E. *table-mele* = Latin *tabulatim* — Palladius on *Husbandrie*, p. 66.

Little by little = M E. *lyttum* and *lytlum*.

Accusative.—Always (O.E. *ealne-weg*), otherwise, sometime, the while, now-a-day, backward, &c.

- * **Prepositional Forms.**—The chief prepositions used to form adverbial expressions are, *a*, (*an*), *on*, *in*, *at*, *of*, *be*, (*by*), *to*.

An = *in*, *on*: *anon* = *in one second*. In M E. we find *on-an* = *anon*.

A = *in*, *on*. *a-bed*, *a-day*, *a-sleep*, *a-loft*, &c.; *a-broad*, *a-cold*, *a-good*, *a-twain*, &c.

On, *in*: *on sleep*, *on high*, *in-deed*, *in vain*, *in short*, *in two*, &c.

At: *at jar*, *at odds*, *at large*, *at night*, *at length*, *at best*, *at first*, &c.

Of (for *a*): *of kin*, *of late*, *of old*, *of new*;

Of (for older genitives), *of a truth*, *of right*.

Be, *by*: *be-times*, *be-cause*, *by turns*, *by degrees*, *by hundreds*.

To: *to-day*, *to-night*, *to-gether*

Per: *per-chance*, *per-haps*

An (= *in*, *on*) occurs in E E and M E before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; as, *an eve*, *in the evening*, *an honde*, *in hand*. **A** is used before words beginning with a consonant.

"Ich am nu elder than ich was a wintre and a lore"—O E. *Hom.* II. 220

This *a* was a separate word as late as the seventeenth century. It is very common before verbal nouns. Cp *a-fishing*, *a-hunting*, *a-weeping*.

As *on* is only another form of *an*, it has replaced *an* before a vowel.

"Set our teeth *an* edge [= *on* edge]."

The Four Book of Princes, p. 116.

A and on, sometimes occur side by side: a-board and on board, a-ground and on ground

An takes the place of in, in the phrase "ever and anon," where *an-on* = M E. *in oon*, in one state

"Ever *in oon*"—CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p. 15

"Ever and *anon* it (earth) must turn about."

HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 1.

~~Sometimes~~ *an end* = *in oon* = continually

As *of* takes the place of a in *akin*, &c so a sometimes takes the place of of

"I have heard a the horses walking a' (on) the top of Paules."

—DEKKER, *Satromastix*, C. 2

"What manner a man."—BECOF.

Cp. "a the appel tre" = o that appel tre = of the apple tree —C *Mundi*, p. 86

This a for o or of explains, man-a-war, justice-a-peace (Dekker), two-a-clock = two o' clock = two of the clock; jack-an-apes.

In M.E. we find *of* long, *of* new, *of*-fer (afar), and even *of* goo = *ggo* (cp O E. *of-gdn*, to go off).

Be sometimes preceded the dative adverb in O E as *be an-fealdum* = *by one fold* = *singly*, from which we have formed our expressions, *by hundreds* and *by fifties* = O E. *be hundredum* and *be fiftegem*. In E E the dative ending dropped, and we have *bi sixe*, *bi seven*, = *by sixes*, *by sevens*, &c Cp. *by pecemeal* for *piecemeal*, (Beaumont and Fletcher)

At especially before superlatives is a contraction of *at the*, M E *atte*. In O E this *thg* was in the dative case. *At random* = Fr *à random*

225 Many adjectives are used as adverbs, especially those with irregular comparisons: *far*, *forth*, *ful*, *ill*, *late*, *little*, *much*, *nigh*, *near*, *well*.

Many monosyllabic adjectives are used as adverbs, as, to work hard; to talk fast; to speak loud; to aim high.

In the earlier stages of the language, the *adverbial* form was marked by a final *-e*, as, *hard* (adj.), *hard-e* (adv.), &c. When this *-e* became silent, then the adjectival and adverbial form became identical.

We can thus easily understand the use of *godly* as adjective and adverb; (cp. "a *godly* life," and "to live *godly*." In OE the distinction was plainly marked, e.g., *god-líc* (adj.), *god-líc-e* (adv.)

The adverbial *-e* was probably a *dative* suffix. In M^W we find instances of the use of this *-e*: they pleye *hastliche* and *steyfliche* (Trevisa).

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the suffix *-ly* was often dropped. as,

"Foolish bold."

"Grievous sick."

BECON.

SHAKESPEARE.

Cp. "*Wondrous* wise"

The history of *wondrous* (wonderfully) is a curious one. In OE the adverb was *wundr-um*, which in ME became *wunder*, *wonder*, T.E. *wonders*. In EE we find *wunderliche*, in ME *wonderli*, and in T.E. *wonderly*. In Ford's works we find "*woundy* bad," i.e. *wonderfully* or *very bad*.

226 II. Pronominal Adverbs.

Many adverbs are derived from the pronominal stems, *the*, *he*, *who*.

PRONOMINAL STEMS	PLACE WHERE	MOTION TO	MOTION FROM	TIME WHEN	MANNER	CAUSE
who	where	whither	whence	when	how	why
the	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the
he	here	hither	hence	—	—	—

The suffixes **-re** and **-ther** in *there*, *here*, *where*, *thither*, &c., were originally locative.

The -n in *the-n*, *whē-n*, &c., is an accusative suffix. See pronouns, § 131, p. 107; § 146, p. 119.

The -ce (M.E. -es), in *then-ce*, &c., represents an older -an, cp. O E. *than-an* (thence), *heon-an* (hence); *hwan-an* (whence).

The O.E. -an denotes motion from: *east-an* = *from the east*, so ~~thence~~ *than-an* = *from that (place)*.

The, before comparatives, as, the *more* (= O E. *thi mære*, Lat *eo magis*) is the instrumental case of the definite article. **the.**

Lest has lost the instrumental *the*. In OE we find *thū las the*, E.E. *las the*, M.E. *leste* = *lest*.

Thus is the instrumental case of this.

How (O.E. *hu*, E.E. *hwu*) -- why 'OF h--' are the inst. cases of **who**. C., ; , . , , t . (reason), *wherefore*, *for-ty* = *for that* (reason), *therefore*

Yea, ye-s, ye-t, are from a relative stem ya, which also had a demonstrative force, as in yon, vond, vonder.

That and **so** are often used as *affirmative* adverbs.

In nay, no, not, now, we have a demonstrative stem, na.

In OE, $ne = not$

"Eart thū of thyres leorning-cnihtum? *nac we eom ic.*"

= Art thou of this man's disciples? not I, I am not

John xviii. 17.

Negatives are often repeated for emphasis.—

"Ne nân se dorste nân thung fcsan."

= No one **durst** ask him anything.

Matt. xxi. 46.

"*Ne eom ic nâ Crist.*"—*John* I. 18

"But he *ne* leste nought for rayn *ne* thonder"

CHAUCER, *Prolog.* l. 492.

O E. *ne* was also a conjunction = *nor*. See Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, I. i. 28.

Not (= O.E. *nôht*, M.E. *noght*, *nat*) = *no whit*, (nothing), has replaced the old *nâ*, *ne*. It has already been shown to be an indefinite pronoun. See aught, § 164, p. 125.

"Ne wen thu *newiht* leoue feder that tu affeare me swa
= ne lef thu *nawt* leoue fender that tu offeare me swa.
Ween thou not dear father that thou may frighten me
so."—*Juliana*, pp. 12, 13

"Ac hit ne helpeth heom *newiht*"—*O E. Misc.* p. 152.

Aught, naught, nothing, something, somewhat, muchwhat, anywhit, &c. may be used as adverbs.

So (= O E *swâ*) was used as a relative pronoun in E.E.; from it we derive also (O.E. *eal-swa*), which, by loss of *l*, has dwindled down to *as* = M.E. *ast* = E.E. *alse* = O E. *eal-swa*.

Ay, sometimes used for yes, is the same as the adverb *aye* = *ever*.

For *ever* or *aye* we find in O.E. *a*, E.E. *o*, *oo*, *ay*, *ey*. Cp. O.E. *a-hwar*, *eg-hwar* = *any-where*; E.E. *o-whar*, *ehtwer*.

What (O E *hwæt*) = *why* (Lat. *quid*) is an adverb:—

"What do you prate of service?"

SHAKESPEARE, *Cor.* III. 3.

227. III. Adverbs formed from Prepositions.

Aft, in "fore and aft," O.E. *æft-an*, after. **Af** is another form of **of** (= *from*). Cp. *af-ter*, *af-ter-wards*.

Be, *by*, *by and by*, *hard-by*, *be sides*, *be hind*, *b-ut be-neath*, &c.

For, *for-th*, *for-thwith*, *a-fore*, *forward* (= M.E. *forth-ward*).

Fro = *from*; "to and fro."

In, *with-in*, E.E. *in-wilth*; M.E. *bin* = O.E. *binnan* = *within*.

Neath, *be-neath*, *under-neath*.

Cp. *ne-ther*, O.E. *ni-ther*, and Sansk. *ni* = *down*.

On, *on-ward*, *on-wards*.

Of, *off*, *a-down* (O.E. *of dūn* = *from the hull*). See

To, *too*; *to ward*, &c.

Through, *thorough*, *thoroughly*, *thoroughly*.

Up, *up-per*, *up-wards*, *up-per-most*.

Out, *with-out*, *a-b-out*, *b-ut*. (See **Prepositions**. § 230, p. 195. § 231, p. 196.)

228. IV. Compound Adverbs.

Many are given under the head of **prepositional forms**. (See § 224, p. 188.)

There, **here**, and **where**, are combined with (1) prepositions, (2) adverbs, (3) indefinite pronouns to form compound adverbs:—*there-of*, *there-to*, *there-*

from, thereby, &c.; where-so-ever, where-ever, &c., else-where, some-where, no-where.

Everywhere = *ever-y-where*, E.E. *ever shwar* (Ancræn Rīwle, p. 200), *y-where* = E.E. *ȝ-hwar*, *ȝ-hwer* = O.E. *ge-hwar*. There was a M.E. *eywhere, aywhere* (which was also combined with *ever*) = O.E. *æg-hwar, everywhere*. Cp. O.E. *āshwar*, M.E. *awher, ouker, ouwhar* = *anywhere*.

In O.E. we have very few compounds of *there, here, and where*, with prepositions, but they are numerous in E.E.

The pronominal adverbs and their compounds, *there, where, whither-of, whither-to*, have the force of relative pronouns.

The compounds of *there, here, where*, with prepositions are almost all archaic. We replace *there-of, there-to, &c.* by *of that, of it, to that, to it, &c.*, *where-of, &c.* by *of which, &c.* and *here in, &c.* by *in this, &c.*

These compounds, being followed by the preposition, resemble the construction of *that*, and the O.E. indeclinable relative *the*.

"Thæt bed *the* se lame *on* læg."

= The bed *that* the lame man lay *on*

= The bed *whereon* [= on which] the lame man lay

Mark ii. 4.

"The ston *that* he leonede *to*."

= The stone *whereto* he leant.

Vernon MS.

Some elliptical expressions containing a verb are used as adverbs, as *may-be, may-hap, how-be it, as it were, to be sure, to wit.*

CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions.

229. Prepositions are so named, because they were originally prefixed to the verb *to* to modify its meaning. Many prepositions still preserve their *adverbial* meaning (cp. *for-swear*, *be-times*, &c.). Some relations denoted by prepositions may be expressed by cascendings. Prepositions are either *simple* or *compound*.

230. I Simple Prepositions.

At (O.E. *æt*, Lat. *ad*).

By (O.E. *be*, *bi*) The original meaning is *about*, *concerning*. Another form of it is O.E. *umbe*, M.E. *umb*, *um*, cp. Gr. *ἀπὸ*, Lat. *amb*, *am*.

For (O.E. *for*, Lat. *pro*).

Fro-m (O.E. *fram*).

Fro (E.E. *fra*).

The *m* in *from* is a superlative suffix. The roots *for* and *fro* are connected with each other, and with *far* and *fore*. Cp. Lat. *pro*, *per*, *præ*.

In, **on** (O.E. *in*, *on*, *an*, Gr. *ἐν*, Lat. *in*).

Of, **off** (O.E. *of* = *from*, Lat. *ab*, Gr. *ἀπό*).

Out (O.E. *ūt*, cp. *utter*, *utmost*)

To (O.E. *tō*). It has often the sense of "for."

Up (O.E. *up*, Lat. *s-up*).

With (O.E. *with*, *wither*, from, against). We have preserved the original force of *with* in *with-stand* &c. The sense of the Lat. *cum* was usually expressed in O.E. by *mid*; Goth. *mīth*, Gr. *μέρα*.

231. II Compound Prepositions.

(1) COMPARATIVES.

Af-ter (O.E. *æf-ter*)¹ is a comparative of the root *af* = *of* = *from*. The suffix *-ter* is the same as *-ther* in *where-ther*, &c.

Ov-er (O.E. *ofer*, Goth. *uf-ar*; Lat. *s-uper*, Gr. *ὑπέρ*), is a comparative of the root *of* or *uf*. We have the same root in O.E. *ufe-weard*, E.E. *uve-weard* = *upward*, *a-b-ove* J -

Un-der (O.E. *under*, Lat. *inter*) contains the root *in* and the comparative suffix *-der* = *-ther*.

In E.E. *under* = *between*; *under that* = *between that*; *meanwhile*.

Through (O.E. *thur-h*; Gr. *dur-χ*), contains the same root as the Lat. *tra-ns*, from the root *thar* or *tar*, *to go beyond*, *to cross*.

(2) PREPOSITIONS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

B-ut (O.E. *b-ut-an*, = *be-ut-an*, *bi-ut-an*) = *be* (*by*) + *ut* (*out*).

A-b-out (O.E. *ā-b-utan* = *ā-be-utan*) = *a* (*on*) + *be* (*by*) + *out*.

A-b-ove (O.E. *b-uf-an* = *be-uf-an*) = a(*on*) + be(*by*) + ove(*up*)

Unto (M.E. *until*), is a compound of unt and to. The same root exists in Goth. *und*, O.E. *ðth* = *onth* = *unto*

In-to, up-on, be-fore, with-in, through out, be-neath, under neath, &c.

(3) PREPOSITIONS FORMED FROM NOUNS.

A-gain, a-gain-s-t (O.E. *an-geân, tō-ge-gnes*)

A-mong (O.E. *ge-mong, on-ge-mong*, E.E. *on-mang, bi-mong*), a = *on*, mong = *ming-l-ing*, mixing Cp. E.E. *monglen, to mix, monglung* = *minglung*

Other prepositions of this sort are *in-stead of* = *in the place of*, (*stead* = place) = *in lieu of, in behalf of, by dint of, by way of, for the sake of, a-breast of, a-board, a-head of, a-cross, be-side; in spite of* = *in despite of*. Sometimes we find *my dispute* = *in dispute of me*. Cp the use of *maugre* (Fr. *malgré*) in M.E. *maugre min, in spite of me, maugre thairez* = *in spite of them*.

(4) ADJECTIVE PREPOSITIONS

E-re (O.E. *ær*, M.E. *er, ar, or*), *before*. See § 116. P 95

Or, the M.E. form *or* = *ar* = *ere* occurs in the authorised version of the Bible. See *Ps. xc 2, Prov. viii 23*.

Or ere (= *or* or = *er er*), is a mere reduplication, like *an if*. See *King John, iv 3, Tempest, i. 2,*

Hamlet, 1. 2. It seems to have acquired the sense of *ere ever*. See Wright's *Bible Word Book*, p. 353.

Till (O E *til* good, O N. *til* to). In M E we find *till* used as a sign of the infinitive; it formed numerous compounds as *until* = *into*, &c.

Along (O E. *and-lang*, E E *an-lang*, M.E. *endelongs*, *endelonges*).

We sometimes find *alongst* (= *alonges*).

"Alongst the lee shore"

WEBSTER, *Northward Ho*

"To lie *along*," = *to lie at full length*.

There is another *along* (O E *ge lang*), in the phrase "*along of*," "*long of*," = *on account of*.

"On hire is al mi lif *along*"

O E *Misc* p 158

"But if it is *along on me*"

GOWER, *Spec E Eng* xx 55

"And that is *long of* contrarie causes"

HOLLAND, *Pliny*, p 25

"All *long of* this vile traitor Somerset"

1 *Hen VI* iv 3

"And this is *long of* her"

FORD.

A-mid, a-midst (O E *on-midd-um*; M E. *a-middes*, *a-midde*, *in-middes*), contains the preposition *a* (on) and the adjective *mid* in *middle*, *mid-most*, &c.

Other prepositions of this kind are, *a-round*, *a-slant*, &c., *an-ent*, respecting = O E. *on-efn*, *on-enin*, near, toward = E E *on-efen-t* = M. E. *anentes*, *anence*, *a-thwart* = across, (O E *on thw orh* Cp *thw orh* = perverse; Icel *þvert*, the acc. neut. of *þverr*, across, transverse), *be-low*, *be-twixt* (O E *be-tweco*) from *two*, *be-tween* (O E *be-tweon-un*) from *twain*.

Since (O E. *sith-than*; E E. *sith-then*, *with-the* M.E. *sithenes*, *sith*, *sin*, *sins*), from *sith* = *late*, O.E. *si-thor* *later*; cp *since when*.

O.E. *sith-than* = *later than*, *after that*.

(5) VERBAL PREPOSITIONS.

These are new forms that have arisen out of the participial (dative) construction: *owing to*, *notwithstanding*, *out-taken*, (replaced by *except*)

We have numerous participial forms of Romanic origin, as, *according to*, *concerning*, *during*, *except*, *respecting*, *saving*, *touching*.

Save = M E *sauf*, *except*. See Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, l. 2182.

Sans (Fr.) = *sine* (Lat) has gone out of use. It was occasionally employed by Shakespeare.

CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions.

232. Prepositions join *words*, one of which is *subordinate* to the other. Conjunctions join *sentences*, and *co-ordinate* terms. Conjunctions are of comparatively late growth, and have sprung from other parts of speech, especially from pronouns, adverbs, and prepositions.

(1) **Pronominal.**—Yet (O.E. *gyt*), if (O.E. *gyf*, M.E. *yt-f*, *ef*, *tf*), yea (O.E. *gea*), and

With *and* is connected the archaic conjunction *an* = *if*.

And is very often written for *an* by older writers.

" I pray thee, Launce, *and if* thou seest my boy,

Bid him make haste "

Two Gentlemen of Verona, in. 1.

We occasionally find *but and if* = *but if*; M.E. *but-if* = *unless*.

We have lost the O.E. *ge-ge*, *both-and*; ac, *but*; ne—*ne*, *neither-nor*, *swa-swa*, *as well-as*; oththe—oththe, *either-or*, *sam-sam*, *the-the*, *whether-or*; the or thy; and for-thy, for-tham(than)-the, be-tham-the = *for that that*, *by that that*, *because*; nu—nu = *now-now*.

For why is *scarce* now It occurs in the Psalms
(Prayer Book).

Either—or; neither—nor; or—or, nor—nor, have the same origin as the indefinite pronouns, *either* and *neither*. See § 168, p. 127.

Or is a corruption of *either* (O E *æther, dither*) and *nor* of *neither* (O E, *neather*) In M E, we find *other*—*other* = *either*
 & *nother*—*nother* = *neither*—*nor*

"Put not thy fyngerys in thy dysche,
Nothyr in flesche *nothyr* in fysche"

Habers Book, p 18

"As trewe as steel ~~either~~ stoon"

fb p 40

See Luke vi 42

El-se, the genitive of el (= *other*), is often supplied by *otherwise*.

So gives rise to *also*, *as*, and *whereas*, the is the root of *though*, (O E. thea-h) *although*, *then*, *than*, *that*, &c.

The stem of **who** occurs in *what—and* (M E *what—what = both . and*), *whether*, *whence*, &c

(2) **Adverbial** (from nouns) — *Likewise*. (= *in likewise*), *sometimes*, *at times*, *whilst*, *otherwhiles*, *besides*, *be-cause*, *on the contrary*, *in order that*, &c

To the end that (Ex viii 22) = O E to them that = to that that.

In O.E. *hwilt-um—hwilt-um*, *hwile—hwile* = *sometimes—sometimes*

"One while (the moon) bended pointwise into tips of horns, another while divided just in the half, and anon again in a compass round, spotted sometime and darke, and . . ."

(3) **Adverbial** (from adjectives)—*Both—and, even, only, now—anon, furthermore, for as much as, evermore, lastly, firstly, finally, &c.* *Lest* = O E *thȳ læs the, læs the*, M E *leste, nathes* = O E. *nā thy læs* = *nevertheless*, *unless* = E.E. *onlesse*.

Not only—but also = O E *nales that ðn that—ac elc swð, as soon as* = *sōna swð—swð* In M E. we find *na the mo* = *never the more*

(4) **Prepositional**, many of which have come in along with the demonstrative *that*.—*Ere, after, before, but, for, since, in that, with that, till (= to), until (= unto)*.

In O E *ðt̃ that* = *until*, E E *a thet*, M E *for-to, for-te, fort* (that), *to that* = *until*. Sometimes *the while til*, and *while* itself, do duty for *until*

For to has sometimes the sense of *in order to* (see Gen xxxi 18, Ex xvi 27).

(5) **Verbal**.—*Say, suppose, to talk of, considering, provided, were it not, how be it, &c.*

CHAPTER XIV

Interjections.

233 Interjections have no grammatical relation to other words in a sentence and are not strictly speaking 'parts of speech.' They are either mere exclamations or cries, as, O! ah! eigh! fy! or else elliptical expressions, as good bye = *god b' w' ye* = *God be with you*

Zounds = *God's wounds*, marry = the *Virgin Mary*, grammercy = *great thanks*

Alas, alack, Fr *hélas*, from *las* (sad), Lat. *lassus*

234 Some words (adverbs, verbs), are used as interjections. *how, well, out, hence, be gone, look, behold.* Cp *hail!* all hail = O E *wes thu hâl* = *hale be thou*, O E. *wes hâl* has become *wassail* See *The Blickling Homilies*, ed. Morris, pp 3, 5.

A few primitive interjections have come down to us from the oldest English; ha, eh (O E *ea*), lo, la, (O E *lā*), heigh (*hig*), woð ('*o*) E. *wā*), well-a-way, well-a-day (O.E. *wā-lā-wā* = *woe-lo woe*, what (O.E. *hwæt*).

CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word formation.

235 The primary elements and significant parts of words are called **roots**, as *tal* in *talk* and *tell*; *bar*, in *bear*, *bairn*, *birth*, &c.

The root is modified (1) by endings called **suffixes** which form **derivatives**, as, *rich-ly*, *nest-ling*; (2) by particles, placed before the root, called **prefixes**, which form **compounds**, as, *for-bid*, *un-true*.

Two words may be placed together to form compound words, as, **blackbird**.

SUFFIXES OF TEUTONIC ORIGIN.

FROM DEMONSTRATIVE ROOTS.

236. I. Noun Suffixes.

Some suffixes have sprung from old demonstrative or pronominal roots; others are merely altered forms of nouns and adjectives. The origin of the former is very obscure; that of the latter tolerably certain. Cp *beauti-ful*, *love-ly*, *glad-some*, &c. See Suffixes of Predicative origin, § 238, p 209. Many words have an old vowel suffix, as, *-ale* = O.E. *cal-u*, *-hue* = O.E. *hro-u*.

It must be borne in mind—

(1) That many prefixes and suffixes have no longer a living power, that is, are not now used to form new derivatives, as the prefix *for* in *for-swear*, and the suffix *-m* in *pleam*, &c

(2) That many derivatives were formed from certain ancient roots or stems in the oldest period of our language, as *flight* from *flēvan*, not from the modern *fly*.

-d gives a kind of *passive* signification to words formed from verbal roots: *deed* from *do* = *that which is done*. Cp. *flood* from *flow*; *glee* (a live coal) from *glow*; *seed* from *sow*.

er (O E. *ere*), denoting the agent or doer: bak-
er. speak-er. mill-er.

Sometimes we find -ar, -or for -er; begg-ar, schol-ar, sail-or.

Under N Fr. influence i or y has crept in before -er; as, law-y-er, glaz-y-er, cloth-y-er.

-man is added to -er in fish-*er*-mans

-t has crept into bragg-ar-t, and -d into dast-ar-d, loll-ar-d ('M E. *lollere*).

-est: earn-est, harv-est.

-ing, the ending of verbal nouns, O.E. *-ung*, as, learn-ing, wnt-ing, &c.

-ing (O.E. *-ing*) forming diminutives: as, farth-ing (from *fourth*), tuth-ing (from *tithe* = *tenth*), nd-ing (from *thrid* = *third*)

This suffix occurs in a few nouns without adding a diminutival force to them:—king (O E *cyn-ing*) —shill-*ing*, penn-y(O E. *fenn-en*), witt-*ng*, warr-*ing*. The suffix -y is also used as a prefix in some words, e.g. *yew-tree*, *yew-green*.

-ling, made up of -l and -ing, forms diminutives: dar-ling (from *dear*), gos-ling, strp-ling, un-ler-ling.

-en in vix-en (from *fox*) was once a common sign of the feminine.

-nd (an old present participial ending): en-nd, fi-nd (from O E. *fi-an*, to hate), freo-nd (from *frew-n*, to love), wi-nd (from *wa*, to blow).

-ness (O E. *-nis, -nes*), forming abstract nouns from nouns and adjectives; as, wit-ness, wilder-ness; dark-ness, good-ness, &c.

-ock. (O E. *-uca*), forming diminutives and patronymics: as, bull-ock, hill ock; pill-ock (a little *pill*), Poll ock (from *Paul*), Wil-cox, Wil-c-ock (from *Will*).

In the Scotch dialects we find ladd-ock, wif-ock. This -ock becomes -ack, or -ie (-y), as, lass-ack, lass-ie. Cp. mamm-y, dadd-y.

-r (instrumental): *finger* (from *fang*, to take) *lair* (from *lie*), *stair* (from *sty*, to climb), *tumbler* (from *tumb*, to turn), *water* (from *weat*, to flow), *aster* (from *astr*, star)
gender: as. *spinster*.

It merely marks the agent in song-ster, huck-ster, malt-ster, young-ster.

Upholsterer or *upholster*, is a corruption of *upholder*.

-s: blis-s (from *blithe*), eave-s. It also appears in *adze, axe*.

-th, -t (of the same origin as the d in *seed*, &c.). It is used, for the most part, to form abstract nouns from verbs and adjectives: as, dear-th (from *dear*), wide-th (from *wide*), heal-th (from *hale*), leng-th (from *long*), slo-th (from *slow*), dea-th (from *die*), bir-th (from *bear*), ear-th (from *ear*, *to plough*)

new things, (from O.E. *fangan*, to take), *tick-le (unsteady), forget-ful = M.E. for-get-el (O.E. for-git-el).

-en, made of. It originally signified *of* or *belonging to* as, flax-en, gold-en, wood-en, &c.

There was once a very large number of adjectives in -en; as, *ashen, oaken, glassen*, &c. The extensive use that could be once made of this suffix may be seen from the following passage —

"God he mæht on the mæht the wæter"

W. 1. 1. 1.

With *firen* piler upon the night "—*Cursor Mundi*, G. II
Clouden piler = pillar of cloud. [6195-6.
Firen piler = pillar of fire.

-en (participial) bound-en, molt-en, &c

-r, -er (O.E. -or, -er, -r): bitt-er from *bite*, slipp-er-y; cp. M.E. slid-er (slippery), lith-er (bad), wak-er (watchful), flicker = flik-er (= fickle, flickering)

-er and -n are combined in east-er-n, north-er-n, south-er-n, west-er-n.

þt: brigh-t, lef-t, ligh-t, righ-t, swif-t. Sec-t, p. 207.
 th: fif-th, six-th, seven-th.

-y (O.E. -ig) an-y, blood-y, clay-ey, craft-y, dirt-y, &c, sill-y (O.E. *sæl-ig*).

-ow arises out of an older -u — call-ow, fall-ow, narr-ow, yell-ow

238. II. Suffixes from Predicative Roots.

(1) NOUNS.

-craft (O.E. *craft*): priest-craft, witch-craft, wood-craft.

-kind (O.E. *syn*) = *kin*: man-kin-d, woman-kin-d.

In E E and M E we find fowl *kin*, worm-*kin*, &c. In M E. *kin*, instead of being used after the noun, was put between the numeral and noun, hence it is mostly found in the genitive case.

"*Monies cunnes ufel*"

= Evil of many a kind

"*For nones kunnes mede*"

= For meed of no kind

"*Alles kinnes bokes*"

= Books of every kind.

In M E we find *alskyns*, *noskyns*, *no skynnes*, *nakin*, *what-kin*. These (Northern) forms are perhaps due to Scandinavian influence Cp Dan *alskens*, "of every sort"

The phrase *no kin* became also *no kind of*, and *no manner*, *no manner of*, &c Cp. the following from the *Cursor Mundi* —

"Of *nankines* worm þat euer is made"—G l. 1961?

"O *nakin* worm þat es made"—G l. 1961

"Of *no maner* worm þat is made"—T l. 1961

-dom = *doom* (O E. *dōm*, Ger. *thum*) thral-dom, wis-dom, cristen-dom, hah-dom (and *halidame* = O E. *hālig-dom*, E E. *halidom*, sanctuary, relic), king-dom (from O E. *cyne*, royal)

In E E *kine* is a very common prefix, *kine-erde* = royal-rod, sceptre, *kine-helm* = crown, *kine-riche* = realm, *kine-setle* = royal settle, throne

-fare (O E. *faru*, way, *faran*, to go), way, course thorough-fare, wel-fare, chaffer (= chap-fare from *cheap*)

-head, -hood (O E. *hād*, state, rank, person; M E. *-hed*, *-hod*, Ger. *-heit*).

God-head, man-hood (M E. *man-hede*, *man-hode*); live-li-hood once signified *hvelness*, but it now represents the O E. *līf-lade*, E E. *lif-lode*, M E. *live-lode* (life-leading), sustenance.

-herd (O E. *hyrde*, pastor, keeper, herdsman):

shep-herd, swine-herd. Cp. goose-herd (Holins-hed), hog-herd (Harrison).

-lock, -ledge (O E. *lāc*, gift, sport), wed-lock, know-ledge (M. E. know-*leche*, know-*lache*, know-*lage*).

O E. *bryd-lac* = marriage, *reaf-lac*, bereaving, spoil. The Icelandic *-læk* (= O E. *-lac*) is very common under the forms ready, polite)

-man often does duty for the O E. *-ere*. Cp. ship-man, chap-man, dust-man, bell-man, work-man (O. E. *wyrht-a*)

M E. *fishere* = fish-er-man. Cp. speaker and spoke-s-man (= M E. *speke-man*). The s is an intruder in *craft-s-man*, *hunt-s-man*, *herd-s-man*. Wife sometimes takes the place of -ster. Cp. *brew-wif* (in *Piers Plowman*) for *brewstere*, *fish-wife* = fish-woman, *mud-wife*, *hussy* = house-wife, *goody* = good-wife

-lock, -lick (O E. *-leac*, *-lic*, plant) gar-lick (spear plant) hem-lock, bar-ley (O E. *ber-lic*, from *bere* barley).

-red (O. E. *rēden* = mode, fashion, condition; Ger. *-rath*) hat-red, kin-d-red.

-rick (O E. *rice*, power, dominion). bishop-rick. Cp. M E. *hevene-riche*, *king-riche* (= E E. *kine-riche*), realm

-ship, -skip, -scape (O. F. *scipe*, Icel. *-skipr* = form, *shape*) friend-ship, lord-ship, wor-ship (= *worth-ship*), land-scape (land-skip) is a modern formation.

Fairfax, in his *Bulk and Salvage of the World*, coins *steamscope* for *atmosphere*.

-stead (O.E. *stede*, place, *stead*, from *stand*), bed-stead; sun-stead = sol-stice

-tree (O.E. *treow*, tree, wood), axle-tree; M.E. *dore-tre* (door-post), *rode-tre* (rood-tree, cross)

-wright (O.E. *wyrhta*, E.E. *wrikte*, a workman, from *work* cp. *wrought*), ship-wright, wheel-wright.

In E.E. we find *psalm-wourhte*, *psalm-wrikte* = psalm-wright, or the O.E. *psalm-sceop* = psalm shaper, psalmist. Becon uses *psalm-o-graph* for psalmist¹

E.E. *bred-wright* = bread-wright = baker

-ward (O.E. *weard*, warder, keeper), ape-ward, bear-ward, hay-ward.

(2) ADJECTIVES.

-fast (O.E. *-fæst*, firm, *fast*) sted-fast, shame-faced (= shame *fast*, modest) root-fast.

-fold (O.E. *-feald*). two-fold, man-fold.

-ful (O.E. *-ful*). aw-ful, bale-ful, hate-ful, need-ful.

-less (O.E. *-leas* = loose): fear-less, god-less.

-ly, -like (O.E. *-lic*, *lic*, Ger. *leich*, body): god-ly, like-ly, man-ly, dove-like, war-like. See § 225, p. 190

"'Tis as *manlike* to bear extremities as *godlike* to forgive"

FORD

-right (O.E. *-riht*) up-right, down-right.

In M.E. *upright* = supine, *downright* = perpendicular

-some (O.E. *-sum*, Ger. *-sam*) is another form of same: dark-some, hard-some, irk-some: buxom

= *bugh-som* = bending some, pliant, obedient, from bow (O E. *būgan* to bend) *lissom* = *lithe-some*

teen, ty = ten. See numerals § 118, p 98.

-ward (O E. *-weard*, becoming, leading to. Cp. O E. *weorth-an*, to become, Lat. *versus*, from *vertere*, to turn) back-ward, for-ward, fro-ward, to-ward, unto-ward.

-wise (O E. *wis*, way, mode): right-eous (O E. *riht-wis* = right-wise. Cp. M E. *tale-wise* = tell-tale, tale-bearing

"For Godd es ever on *riht-wis* side,
Werrand [warring] again *goran-sus* pride"

C Mundi, G. II 7547, 7548

-worth (O E. *-weorth*, E E. *-wurthe*) stal-worth, dear-worth (precious)

In E E we find *luue-wurthe* (love-worthy), *kine-wurthe* (royal)

239 IV. Adverbial Suffixes.

The demonstrative suffixes -s, -m, -nce, have already been treated of under adverbs, §§ 224, 226, pp 187, 188, 191

The following are of predicative origin —

-ly (O E. *-lice*). bad-ly, on-ly, lone-ly (= *al-one-ly*), utter-ly, willing-ly See -ly, p 212

-ling, -long (O E. *-lunga*, *-linga*) · head-long, flat-ling, dark-ling, side-ling side-long.

In M E we find the genitive form -lynges (linges) in *grof-lynges* = groveling (prone), *hellinges* = headlong

"I'll run headlongs by and by"

WEBSTER, *Northward Ho*

"Hurlet (hurld) hym down *hedlynges*."

The Gest Hystoriale, l 7485

Nose linges, *naselynge*, *noslyngys* (supine, with the nose upward), *handlynges* (hard to hand)

-meal (O.E. *-mælum*, from *mæl*, division, *meal*):
 lamb-meal, piece-meal, flock-meal.

-ward, -wards: hither-ward, down-wards, up-wards. See p. 213.

-wise (see p. 213): other-wise, no-wise, like-wise.

In M.E. we find "in, other wise," "in no wise," "in like wise," "in the same wise," "in what wise."

-way, -ways: al-way, al-ways, straight-way, straight-ways.

-Gate or gates = *gait*, *way*, is a suffix in M.E.

Thus -gate, other -gates, so *gate*

240. V. Verbal Suffixes.

-k (frequentative or intensive): har-k (from *hear*),
 tal-k (from *tell*), stal-k (from *steal*)

-l, -le (frequentative) dibb-le (from *dip*), drubb-le
 (from *drip*), dazz-le (from *daze*), grapp-le (from *grasp*),
 dwind-le (from *dwine*), knee-l, spark-le, start-le.

-n (causative). hast-en, strength-en, fatt-en, short-en, &c.

This suffix had once a reflexive or passive signification. Cp
learn from M.E. *leren*

-r (frequentative or intensive). ling-er, (O.E.
leng-an, to delay), flitt-er, glitt-er, glimm-er, welt-er.

Stagger = M.E. *stakeren*. *For change of consonant before
 the suffix, cp drubb-le from *drip*, &c.

s: ble-ss (O.E. *blēt-s-an*, from *blot*, sacrifice),
 clean-se, tru-s-t, cla-s-p (from *clap*), gra-s-p, (from
grap), li-s-p (from *lip*).

Rinse = Fr *rincer* (= *rinse-er*, from a root found in Goth,
kraim-jan, to cleanse, *kraims*, pure, clean Ger *rein*, pure.)

241. COMPOSITION.

Two or more words joined together to make a single term, expressing a new notion, are called **Compounds**: as, *black-bird*, *rail-road*, *rain-bow*, &c.

The accent distinguishes a compound word from the mere collocation of two terms, as *blackbird* and *Black bird*. The hyphen is used to denote a compound, as, *passer-by*, *man-of-war*, *coast-line*, &c.

Notice the shortening of the long vowel in compounds, as, *breakfast*, *shepherd*; *vineyard* (= M E. *wyn-yard*).

Compound words form **nouns**, **adjectives**, **verbs**, and **adverbs**.

I. Noun-Compounds.

Noun and noun:—

Noontide, *churchyard*, *oaktree*, *doomsday*, *kinsman*, *herdsman*, *man-killer*, &c.

There are many similar old compounds whose elements are so fused together that we do not recognize them at first sight.

Bridal = bride-ale

Bandog = band-dog, Holmshed has *band-dog* or *tie-dog*.

Gospel = *god-spell* = good-word

Nostril = *nose-thrill* = nose-hole (O E. *thyrel* = hole).

Orchard = *wort-* (herb) *yard* (garden), O E. *ort-gard*.

Nightingale = night singer (O E. *niht-gale*).

Hand-y-work = O.E. *hand-gewerc*, hand work.

Cp. everywhere = E.E. *ever-itwer* = O E. *afre* + *ghewar*.

2. Substantive and adjective.—

Alderman, *freeman*, *blackbird*, *midnight*, *upperhand*,

For a longer list, see "Historical Outlines," p. 222.

(M.E. *over-hand*), *fore-thought*, *neighbour* = O.E. *neah-bur* = nigh dweller, *twilight*, *fortnight*, &c.

3 Substantive and pronoun :—

Self-will, *self-esteem*, *self-sacrifice*.

(4) Substantive and verb :—

Bakehouse, *pickpocket*, *telltale*, *spendthrift*, *godsend*, *windfall*.

II. Adjective-Compounds.

1. Substantive and Adjective :—

Blood-red, *snow-white*, *sea-sick*, *heart-sick*, *fire-proof*, *praise-worthy*.

2. Adjective and substantive :—

Bare-foot, *bare-foot-ed*. Cp. O.E. *clæn-heort* = havin^g a clean heart, *æn-eage* = one-eyed, *four-footed*, &c.

3. Adjective and adjective —

Fool-hardy (*fool* = foolish). Cp. *mad-hardy*, *blue-green*, *rathe-ripe*.

4 Participial combinations :—

(a) Noun and pres part : *earth-shaking*, *heart-rending*, *match-making*.

(b) Adjective and pres. part : *ill-looking*, *time-serving*.

(c) Noun and pass. part : *earth-born*, *chap-fallen*, *heart-broken*, *thunder-struck*.

(d) Adjective and pass. part : *new-made*, *well-bred*, *dead-drunk*, &c.

III. Verb-Compounds.

1. Noun and verb : *backbite, hoodwink, henpeck, waylay.*
 2. Adjective and verb : *dry-nurse, white-wash*
 3. Verb and adverb *doff = do off, don = do on*
- (c) *cross-question.*

For compound adverbs, see § 228, p 193, 194.

22 COMPOSITION WITH PARTICLES OF ENGLISH ORIGIN.

I. Inseparable Particles.

a- (O.E. *an*, E.E. *an*) on· a back, a-bed, a-board,
a-bill, a-bay, a-bell, a-bend, a-bird, a-bite, a-blaze,
a-bloom, a-blossom, a-bow, a-brace, a-burn, a-bush,
a-buzz, a-care, a-chance, a-child, a-choice, a-climb,

1 The original form *an* occurs in *an-on* (*in one moment*) *an-ent* (see p. 188), *a-c-knowledge* (O E *æncedwian*), *an-vil* (O E *an-filt*)

2 A- (OE *af*, off, from) a-down = OE *af* *diene*, from

Perceive

O_2^2 is a 2×2 matrix, $O_2^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, and $O_2^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$.
 (See [1] for details.)

~~3.~~ A. (O E. *af*, Goth *us* = out of, from), a-rise, a-rouse, a-f-frighted, a-wake, a-light; a-go = passed by.

"All this world schal a-go"

O E Misc p 160.

(3) With substantives it forms verbs, *be-friend*, *be-troth*, and a few others of recent origin.

(4) It enters into the composition of *nouns*, as *be-half*, *be-hest*, *be-hoof*, *be-quest*, *by-name*, *by-path*, *by-word*, &c.; and of *prepositions* and *adverbs*, as *be-fore*, *be sides*, *b-ut*, &c. *Bye-law* probably contains the Scandinavian "by," a *town*.

Be-head = O E *heafstian*, E E *bi-headedness*, to decapitate.

Be-lieve = O E *ge-lyfan*, M E *believen*.

Be-reave = O E *reafian*, E E *bereavien*.

Be-gun = O E *on-ginnan*, E E *bi-ginnen*.

Be-guay is a corruption of the O E *on-wracon*, to discover; O E *be-wracon*, signified to cover, the *be* is perhaps due to the M E *bi-traien*, to betray.

In *be-ware* we have the verb *be* (imper) and the adjective *ware* (= cautious).

for- (O.E. *for-*). The original meaning of this prefix was *through, thorough*, like Lat. *per* *for-swear* (Lat. *per-jurare*), *for-bid*, *for-bear*, *for-get*, *for-give*, *for-lorn*, *fore-go* (= *for-go*). The p. p. *fore-gone* is rare.

For-do occurs also in the place of the modern *do for*. Cp. Lat. *per-dere*. Spenser has *for-pined*, *for-wasted*, *for-wearied*. We sometimes find *for* joined to Romance roots, as, *for send* = *defend*, *forbid*, *for-bated*, *barrat up*, *debarred*.

From the sense of *overmuch* comes that of *amiss, badly*, in *fore-speak*, *fore-spent*.

fore- (O.E. *fore*, Lat. *fræ*, before): *fore-bode*, *fore-cast*, *fore-tell*, *fore-said*, *fore-father*, *fore-noon*, *fore-sight*, *fore-head*.

fore-gone, the p. p. of *fore-go* (rarely used), to go before, must be distinguished from *fore-go* (= *for-go*), and *fore gone* (= *for-gone*).

gain- (O E *gegn, gean*) = against. Cp. *a-gain*.
Gain-say, gain-stand, gain-strive, gain-giving.

Cp M E. *gein-come* = return, *gain-sawe* = contradiction;
again was once used as a prefix Cp M E. *ayen-bite* = remorse,
ayen-byggen = redeem, *ayen wiste* = counterpoise

i-, y- (O E *ge-*, M E *i*) This prefix was once a
 sign of the pass part. as, y-clept, y-chained (Milton)
 It is wrongly used in y-pointing (Milton, *On Shal-*
spere). It enters into the composition of *i* wis (O E
ge-wis, truly, certainly), every-where, hand-y work

mis- (O E *mis*), wrong, ill Cp a-mis (= on
 the wrong, M.E. *miſſe* wrong, injury) *mis-*
behave, mis-deed, mis lead, mis-trust, mis-take,
mis-like, (in Shakespeare) has become *dis-like*.

For *mis-* in *mischief*, see p. 243

nether-, (O E. *ni-ther*) = down, below: *nether-*
stocks, nether-lands

sand- (O E *sām*, half) *sand-blind* = half-blind,

"Wrinkled, *sand-blind*, toothless, and deformed"—BURTON,

(*Piers Plowman*, C. Text, ix. 311, p. 155)

to- (O E. *to-*). This is an adverbial form of *two*
 (cp Lat *dis-*) signifying *asunder, in pieces*: O.E. *to-*
brecan = to break to pieces, *to-dælan* = to divide,
 E.E. *to don*, to do asunder; *to-fleon*, to fly asunder;
 M E *to-pullen*, to pull to pieces, &c.

It sometimes has an intensive force, and is
 strengthened by the adverb *all* (quite).

"And all *to-* brake his skull "

Judges R. 5, 3

"Al is *to-* broken thilke regnour "

CHAUCER, *Knight's Tale*, l. 2759.

Go to (used as an interjection in *Hamlet* 1. 3) seems to correspond to *to-go* = O.E. *to-gān*, *to go away, depart*, cp *for-do* and *do-for*.

- For the phrase "*all to*," see *all*, § 243.

to- is the ordinary preposition "to" in *to-day*, *to-night*, *to-morrow*, *to-gether*, *here-to-fore*, *to-ward*.

un- (O.E. *on-*, Goth. *and-*, Ger. *ent-*) = back (with verbs): *un-bind*, *un-do*, *un-fold*, *un-lock*, *un-wind*.

un- (O.E. *un-*) = not (with adjectives, and nouns formed from adjectives): *un-true*, *un-wise*, *un-told*, *un just*, *un truth*.

wan- (O.E. *wan*) *wan-ing*, *want-ing*. *wan-hope* = *despair*; *wan-ton* = *want-tonen*, untrained, wild; *-tonen* is the O.E. *togen*, p.p. of the O.E. verb *te on*, lead, draw. Cp Ger. *un-ge-zogen*.

with- (O.E. *with-*, a shortened form of *wi-ther*), against, back. *with-draw*, *with-hold*, *with-stand*.

243. II Separable Particles.

After (O.E. *after*): *after-growth*, *after-math*, *after-clap*, *after-dinner*, *after-ward*

All (O.E. *eal*): *al-mighty*, *al-one*, *l-one*, *l-onely*, *l-onesome*, *al-to-gether*, *al-most*, *al-though*, *al-so*, *a-s*

All, meaning *quite*, is^o very often joined to the adverb *to* (too), and was made to precede the prefix *to-* in composition (See *to-* p. 220)

"*All to dirtied*"—LATIMER

"*All to ruffled*"—MILTON.

M.E. "*Al to longe*"

Life of Becket, 774.

E.E. "*Al to wel*"

Juliana, p. 50.

Forth (O E. *forth*) · forth-coming, forth-going
for-ward (O E. *forth-weard*)

"From that day *forthward* man most nedes dese"—*Trevisa*.

Cp E.E. *forth-fare* = departure, *forth-gong* = progress, &c

Fro, from (O E. *fram*, O.N. *fra*): fro-ward, from-ward.

In (O E. *in*) in-come, in-land, in-sight, in-born,
in-bred, in-wardly, in-ly, in lay, in-fold, in-to.

In many verbs *in* has been replaced by a Romance form (*en-*, *em-*): *en-dear*, *em-butter*.

Of (O E. *of* = from, *off*^f) · of-fal, off set, off-shoot,
off-spring. See a-, pp. 217-8

In M E we find *of-schreden*, shred off, *of-smiten*, smite off;
E.E. *of-springen*, to spring from

On (O E. *on*, upon, forward) · on-set, on-slaught,
on-ward.

Out, ut (O E. *ūt*): out-come, out-let, out-break,
out-pour, out-cast, out-joint, out-law, out-landish,
out-side, out-ward, ut ter. It sometimes signifies
beyond, over, as in out-bid, out-do

Over (O.E. *ofer*) above, beyond, exceedingly,
too:—

(1) With nouns and adjectives: *over-eating*, *over-*
flow, *over-plus* (E.E. *over-ekke*), *over-joy*, *over-big*,
over-much.

(2) With verbs *over-flow*^c, *over-hang*, *over-run*,
over-take, *over work*, *over-whelm*, *over-hear*, *over-*
look^c

Over (O E. *uſe-ra*, E.E. *uwe-re*, superior; cp
a-b *ove*) · *over-coat*, *over-man*; M.E. *over-lippe* =
upper-lip; *ofer-hand* = upper-hand.

Through, thorough (O E. *thurh*, E.E. *thurich*):

thorough-fare (M E *thurgh-fare*), tiffrough-out, thorough-bred, through-train.

Cp E E *thurgh-feren* (to go through), *thurk-driven*, *thurk-schen*, *thurk-wunian* (to remain); M.E *thorow-bore* (bore through), *thorow-ride*, &c.

Under (O E. *under*). under go, under-stand, under-lay, under mine, under-let, under-sell, under-growth, under-ling, under-wood, under-hand, under-neath.

Up (O E. *up*): up bear, up braid, up hold, up-heave, up-lifted, up-land, up-shot, up-right, up-start, up-ward, up-on.

244. SUFFIXES OF ROMANIC ORIGIN

Under the head of Romanic suffixes we must distinguish (1) those Latin suffixes that have a Norman French form, (2) those suffixes that are unchanged, being borrowed directly from the Latin language, (3) modern French and other Romance endings of Latin origin.

Voy-age comes through N. French, its Latin form is *viaticum*. Cp. *beni-son* with *benediction*, *charm-el* and *charm-al*, &c.

Liqu-our has a N. French form; liqu-eur comes to us from modern French; cp *antec* (N Fr.), *antique* Fr. *Cavalc-ade*, *escap-ade*, are Italian words that have come to us through the French. The true French forms are *chevauch-ée* and *échapp-ée*, other forms in -ade (originally -ado), come to us directly from the Spanish language, as *crus-ade*, *brav-ado*, *torn-ado*, &c.; cp. *prem-ier* (Fr.), *prim-ary* (Lat), *prim-er*

(N Fr.) Many suffixes of Norman French origin have now no living power, not being used to form new derivatives

I. Noun Suffixes.

-age (Lat. *-aticum*), forms abstract nouns: *advantage*, *beverage*, *courage*, *homage*.

It sometimes denotes the place where, as in *hermitage*, *parsonage*

Tillage and *cottage* are hybrids.

-ain, -an, -en, -on (Lat. *-anus*): *chaplain*, chief *ain*, *villain*, *pelican*, *peasant*, *warden* (= *guardian*), *sexton* (= *sacristan*), *surgeon*, *sovereign*

Modern formations, having no corresponding Latin form in *-anus*, are *antiquarian*, *barbarian*, *civilian*, *grammarian*, *librarian*, &c.

From modern French come *artisan*, *courtesan*, *partisan*

-ain (Lat. *-aneus*), appears in *mountain*, *campaign*, *champaign*.

-al, -el (Lat. *-alis*) *canal*, *cardinal*, *cathedral*, *coronal*, *spittal*, *chann-el*, *catt-le*, *chatt-el*, *fu-el*, *jew-el*, &c.

Lat. *-alis* (pl.) appears in *batt-le*, *entr-al*, *marv-el*, *rasc-al*, *spous-als*, *victu-als*

-ant, -ent (Lat. *-antem*, *-entem*) are participial suffixes, sometimes marking the agent:—

Coven-ant, *gr-ant*, *merch-ant*, *serge-ant*, *brig-and*, *diam-on-d*, *innoc-cent*, *stud-ent*.

-ance, -ence (Lat. *-antia*), form abstract nouns:—

Abund-ance, *allegi-ance*, *ch-ance* (= *cad-ence*), *par-vey-ance* (= *provid-ence*), *obedi-ance* (= *obedi-ence*), *prud-ence*, *sci-ence*, &c.

-ancy, -ency, are new formations from the Latin -antia, -entia, becoming (1) -antie, -entie, (2) -ancie, -encie, &c., brilli-ancy, excell-ency, &c.

sé-ance is from modern French.

-and, -end (Lat. *-andus*, *-endus*), are gerundial suffixes :—

(1) Garl-*and*, vi-*and*, leg-*end*, prov-*end*-er.

(2) *Memorandum* retains its Latin form; (3) *prebend*, *reprimand*, are directly from Modern French.

-ar, -er, -or (Lat. *-arium*), marks the place where; it enters into the name of some common objects.

(1) Cell-*ar*, mort-*ar*, chart-*er*, dow-*er*, sampl-*er*,
garn-*er*, lard-*er*, sauc-*er*, man-*er*.

(2) **-ary** (Lat *-arium*), *gran-ary*, (= *garn-er*), *avi-ary*, *semin-ary*, *viv-ary*.

In M E. we find O Fr. *-are* in *sal-are*, *seyntu-are* (sanctuary), *lettu-are* = electuary.

(i) -ar, -er, -or (Lat. *-arius*), marks the agent: calend-*ar*, vic-*ar*, arch-*er*, butch-*er*, butl-*er*, carpent-*er*, farn-*er*, messeng-*er*, treasur-*er*, bachel-*or*, cancell-*or*, counsell-*or*.

(2) **-ary** (Lat. *-arius*) *advers-ary*, *secret-ary*, &c.

Commiss-*arie* = commissary, *not-arie* = not-ary, are met with in M.E. and the suffix is *ſwing* to the O Fr -*arie*, not -*arie*. See -ry, p 230.

-ard (Low Lat. *-ardus*, Ger. *-hart*, Eng. *hard*).
cow-ard, dull-ard, nigg-ard, buzz-ard, tank-ard, &c.

[illegible]

Sweet, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850,

-ate (N.^oFr. *-at*, Lat. *-atus*, pass. part.) *cur-ate*, *leg-ate*, *reneg-ate*.

Most nouns in **-ate** are of recent origin, **-ade** is the Spanish form of **-ate**. Cp *reneg-ade* = *reneg-ate*. *Advocate* has replaced M E *avocat*, Fr. *avocat*.

-ee (Fr. *-ée*, Lat. *-atus*, suffix of pass. part.), marks the agent in a passive sense.

Appell-ee, *legat-ee*, *trust-ee*, &c, are from Modern French.

-eer, -ier (Fr. *-er, -ier*, Lat. *-arius*): *engi-eer*, *mountain-eer*, *harpoon-er*, *brigad-ier*, *prem-ier*, *chand-ier*, are from Modern French. See **-ar, -er**, p. 225, for the N. French form.

-el (Lat. *-ela*). *cant-el*, *cand-le*, *quarr-el*, *tut-el-age*.

-el (Lat. *-ellus, -ellum*). *bush-el*, *bow-el*, *chanc-el*, *mors-el*, *cast-le*, *mant-le*, *pann-el*, *pomm-el*.

-en, -in (Lat. *-enus, -ena, -enum*). *ali-en*, *warr-en*, *flor-in*, *cha-in*, *verm-in*, *ven-om*.

-er (Lat. *-eria*): *gart-er*, *gutt-er*, *matt-er*, *pray-er*.

Barrier is the Modern-French *barrière*. See **-ry**, p. 230.

-erel, -rel, has a diminutive force: *cock-erel*, *dott-erel*, *mack-erel*, *pick-rel*, *pick-erel*; T.E. *daint-rel* = a *dain-ty*.

-ern (Lat. *-erna*). *cav-ern*, *cist-ern*, *tav-ern* (cp. *tab-ern-acle*).

-et, -ot (N. Fr. *-et, -ot*, Fr. *-et, -ette, -at, -ot*), is a diminutive suffix.

Blank-et, *cygn-et*, *hatf-et*, *pock-et*, *tick-et*, *char-ot*, *fagg-ot*, *parr-ot*.

-et, -ot, -ette (see above): *ball-et*, *ball-ot*, *bill-ot*, *paroqu-et*, *etiqu-ette*, *coqu-ette*, from Modern French.

To the original **-et** has been prefixed **l** (for *el*),

making a new diminutive suffix, -let ³ in *ham-let*, *stream-let*, &c. See -el, p. 226.

-ess (Lat. *-issa*), sign of the feminine gender. See p. 66, § 85.

ess, -ice, -ise (Lat. *-itia*). *distr-ess*, *larg-ess*, *laches*, *rich-es*, *prow-ess*, *franch-ise*, *merchand-ise*, *avar-ice*, *coward-ice*, *just-ice*, M.E. *covet-eise* has become *covetous-ness*.

Serv-ice = Lat. *serv-itium*; *burg-ess* = O.F. *burgens*, *court-ess* (= M.E. *curt-ess*), and *marq-uss* contain Latin *-ensis*.

-ice, -ise (Lat. *-icem*): *matr-ice*, *pum-ice*, *pent-house* (= *pent-ise*), *jud-ge*, *partrid-ge*, *paun-ch*.

-ice, (Lat. *-icius*): *apprent-ice*, *nov-ice*, *surpl-ice*, *pil-ch* (= *pel-isse*).

-ic, -c (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, Gr. *ικός*): *log-ic*, *mus-ic*, *phys-ic*, *heret-ic*, *clerk* (= *clerk-ic*), *por-ch*, *per-ch*, *ser-ge*, *for-ge* (= *fabr-ic*).

-icle (Lat. *-iculus*): *art-icle*, *part-icle*.

Ice-ice = O.E. *is-gic-el* = *ice-jag*. Cp. *Icyohels* in footnote to *Piers Plowman*, B. xvii 227, p. 315.

-iff (Lat. *-ivus*): *bail-iff*, *cant-iff* (= *cap-tive*), *plaint-iff*. See -ive, p. 234.

-ine, -in (Lat. *-inus*): *div-ine*, *fam-in*, *medic-ine*, *vas-in*, *citr-in*, *cous-in*, *gobl-in*, *pilgr-im* (= *peregr-ine*), *rav-ine*.

Latin atonic *-ina* disappeared in Old French, hence English *dame*, *page*; Modern French has reintroduced it under the form, *-ine*, whence our *machine*.

in (Lat. *-inem*): *marg-in*, *qng-in*, *virg-in*.

-ism (Lat. *-ismus*, Gr. *-ισμός*): *de-ism*, *fatal-ism*, *ego-t-ism*. Many are direct from the Greek, as *barbar-ism*, *lacon-ism*.

No words of N.Ft. origin end in *-ism*. Cp. M.E. *sophisme* = *sophism*.

-ist (Lat. *-ista*, Gr. *-ιστής*): bapt-*ist*, evangel-*ist*, chor-*ist*-er; M.E. soph-*ist*-er = soph-*ist*.

More recent forms are dent-*ist*, de-*ist*, exorc-*ist*, flor-*ist*, medall-*ist*, novel-*ist*, and numerous others.

-ite (Lat. *-ita*, Fr. *-ite*) forms patronymics: Israel-*ite*, Jesu-*it*.

-id (Lat. *-id*, Gr. *-ιδ*, Fr. *-ide*): Æne-*id*, Nere-*id*. Many modern chemical words end in -*id*, as alkalo-*id*.

-le (Lat. *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*): fab-*le*, tab-*le*, stab-*le*, peop-*le*, with preceding *c* (which is sometimes lost), we have artic-*le*, mirac-*le*, pinnac-*le*, obstac-*le*, appar-*el*, dams-*el*, fenn-*el*, lent-*il*, parc-*el* (= partic-*le*), penc-*il*, per-*il*.

Modern forms in -*bule*, -*cle*, -*cule*, are borrowed directly from the Latin.

-lence (Lat. *-lencia*) forms abstract nouns. There are very few of these forms in M.E. We find pesti-*lence* and vio-*lence*, other forms are quite recent. See -*lent*, p. 234.

-lency is sometimes found for -*lence*, like -*ency* for -*ence*.

-let. See -*et*, p. 226.

-m, -me (Lat. *-men*): char-*m*, real-*m*, cri-*me*, nou-*n*, re-nou-*n*, leav-*en* (= Lat. *leva-men*, Fr. *lev-ain*).

-me, the modern French form is contained in alu-*m*, legu-*me*, volu-*me*, regi-*me*.

-men, the original Lat. form, is retained in all later loans, as acu-*men*, bitu-*men*, &c.

-m, -me (Lat. *-ma*, Gr. *-μα*): baptis-*m*, phanto-*m* (= phantas-*m*), the-*me*.

From modern French we have borrowed diade-*m*, anagra-*m*, emble-*m*, proble-*m*.

From the Greek we get anagram, epigra-*m*, paradig-*m*, pano-*ra-ma*, enthusias-*m*, pleonas-*m*, telegram.

-*ment* (Lat. *-mentum*). argu-*ment*, command-*ment*, enchant-*ment*, gar-*ment*, nourish-*ment*, oint-*ment*, parlia-*ment*.

It is added to Teutonic words, as, acknowledge-*ment*, alone-*ment*, bereave-*ment*, fulfil-*ment*, &c.

-*mony* (Lat. *-mon-ium*, *-mon-ia*), cere-*mony*, matri-*mony*, testi-*mony*.

-*on*, -*eon*, -*ion*, -*in* (Lat. *-onem*, *-ionem*), form many nouns denoting act of, state of apr-*on*, bac-*on*, cap-*on*, falc-*on*, fel-*on*, gall-*on*, glutt-*on*, mas-*on*, mutt-*on*, sim-*plet-on*, tal-*on*, champ-*ion*, compan-*ion*, clar-*ion*, march-*ion-ess*, on-*ion*, stall-*ion*, scorp-*ion*, pant-*ion*, pig-*eon*, scutch-*eon*, sturg-*eon*, trunch-*eon*.

The N.Fr. forms of the suffix were, (1) *-un*, *-un*, (2) *-oun*, *-ounn*.

-*oon* (Fr. *-on*, Ital. *-one*), ball-*oon*, bat-*oon*, drag-*oon*, harp-*oon*, sal-*oon*, buff-*oon*, poltr-*oon*, are not from N. French.

Some words in *-oon* seem to be augmentatives, as, ball-*oon*, sal-*oon*, &c., others are diminutives, as, haberge-*on*, flag-*on*.

-*our* (Lat. *-orem*): ard-*our*, col-*our*, fav-*our*, hon-*our*, lab-*our*, lang-*our*, liqu-*our*, rum-*our*.

The Modern French form is *-eur*, as, ard-*eur*, grand-*eur*, liqu-*eur*; the N.Fr. was (1) *-ur*, (2) *-our*.

-*or*, -*our*, -*er*, (Lat. *-orem*): jur-*or*, govern-*our*, emper-*or*, anti-*er*, compil-*er*, divin-*er*, found-*er*, preach-*er*, juggl-*er*, lev-*er*.

N. Fr. *-our* has become *-er* in receiv-*er*, robb-*er*, trench-*er*.

-tor (Lat. *-torem*): audi-*tor*, doc-*tor*, proc-*tor*, trai-*tor*, au-*thor*, indi-*ter*.

-our, -or, -er (Lat. *-orium, -oria*): min-*or*, parl-*our*, raz-*or*, viz-*or*, sciss-*ors*, count-*er*, cens-*er*, lav-*er*, (= lavat-*ory*), mang-*er*, covert-*ure*.

In M.E. we find a few forms in *-erie = ory*. (Cp Fr *-oire*), as lavat-*erie*, orat-*erie*, purgat-*erie*.

-oir (Fr. *-oir*, Lat. *-orium*): abatt-*oir*, from modern French.

-ory, the full form of Lat. *-orium*, occurs in audit-*ory*, dormit-*ory*, refect-*ory*, repert-*ory*.

-ry, -ery (N. Fr. *-erie*): fai-*ry*, hazard-*ry*, jew-*ry*, poet-*ry*, poult-*ry*, spice-*ry*, surg-*ery*, cook-*ery*, house-*wife-ry*, mid-*wife-ry*.

We have a large number of words with this ending unknown to Middle English as, slave-*ry*, peasant-*ry*, thief-*ry*, witch-*ery*, trump-*ery*.

-ry (Lat. *-aria*) chival-*ry*, caval-*ry*, carpent-*ry*, pant-*ry*, vint-*ry*. Cp. the modern forms, chapel-*ry*, deane-*ry*, &c.

-ry (Lat. *-arium*) · dow-*ry*, laund-*ry*, vest-*ry*, treasu-*ry*.

-son (Lat. *-sonem*) · beni-*son*, mali-*son*, le-s-*son*, ori-*son*, pri-*son*, ran-*son*, rea-*son*, sea-*son*, trea-*son*, veni-*son*, fashi-*on*.

With these compare the parallel forms that have come into our language direct from Latin. benedic-*tion*, male-dic-*tion*, lec-*tion*, ōra-*tion*, po-*tion*, redemp-*tion*, ra-*tion*, tradi-*tion*, fac-*tion*.

Many words now ending in *-tion*, as, nation, salvation, &c., once ended in *-cion* (E.E.), *-cionn*, *-cion* (M.E.)

-sion (Lat. *-sionem*) · conver-*sion*, man-*sion*, pen-*sion*,

pas-sion, pri-son, pro-ces-sion, vi-sion, &c ; with foi-son (plenty), compare pro-fu-sion.

-sy (Lat. -sia, Gr. -σις): catalep-sy, drop-sy, pal-sy, (= paraly-sis), fren-sy.

Nouns ending in -sis are modern words that have come direct from Greek

-se, a still shorter form of this suffix, occurs in: apocalyp-se, ba-se, eclip-se.

-t (Lat. -tus): conduc-t, conven-t, frui-t, strai-t, sain-t. See y, p. 232.

-t (Lat. -tum): deb-t, fea-t (= fac-t), join-t, poin-t.

-t (Lat. -ta): aun-t, ren-t, &c. See y, p. 232.

-t, -te (Lat. -ta, Gr. -της) aposto-te, come-t, hermi-t, plane-t, prophe-t, idio-t.

-ter (Lat. -ter): mis-ter, mas-ter (= magis-ter), minis-ter, fri-ar (Lat. fra-ter)

-tery (Lat. -terium): mas-tery, minis-tery.

-tor (Lat. -tor). See p. 230.

-dor in battle-dor, mata-dor, is a Spanish form

-trix (Lat. -trix), a feminine suffix. See p. 67.

-ter, -tre (Lat. -trum, Gr. -τρον) clois-ter, spec-tre, scep-tre.

The full form occurs in modern words, as, "spectrum analysis"

Another form of -trum is -trum, in sepul-chre, brum in mem-brum Cp. *candela brum, cere-brum*.

-tude (Lat. -tudinem): beat-tude, multi-tude, &c., are direct from Latin. *Cus-tom* = Lat. *consuetudinem*.

-ty (Lat. -tatem): beau-ty, boun-ty, chari-ty, cruel-ty, feal-ty, (= fidelity), frail ty, &c.

-ule. See e, p. 228.

-ure (Lat. -ura) advent-ure, apert-ure, creat-ure,

forfeit-*ure*, nāt-*ure*, nurt-*ure*, meas-*ure*, past-*ure*, se-
pult-*ure*, stat-*ure*, vest-*ure*

Arm-*our* = M. Lat. *armatura*

-*y* (Lat. *-ia*). cop-*y*, famil-*y*, felon-*y*, nav-*y*, stor-*y*,
victor-*y*, &c, Ital-*y*, Arab-*y* and Arab-*ia*

-*y* (Lat. *-ium*) horolog-*y*, jo-*y*, stud-*y*. Directly
from the Latin are formed augur-*y*, obsequ-*y*, remed-*y*,
&c.

-*y* (Lat. *-atus*). attorn-*ey*, deput-*y*, all-*y*

Many words in -*cy*, -*sy*, are formed on the model of Fr
words in *-cie*, Lat *-tia* — cura-*cy*, minstrel-*cy*, &c. Cp degene-
ra-*cy*, intima-*cy*, &c., the corresponding adjectives of which end
in *-atic*

-*y* (Lat. *-tus*), cler-g-*y*: coun-t-*y*, duch-*y*, trea-t-*y*.

-*y* (Lat. *-tia*), arm-*y*. embass-*y*, chmn-*cy*, countr-*y*,
dela-*y*, destin-*y*, entr-*y*, journ-*ey*, jur-*y*, paft-*y*, vall-*ey*
See *-ee*, p. 226.

-*y* (Lat. *-ies*) progen-*y*

II. Adjective Suffixes.

-*al* (Lat. *-alis*), annu-*al*, besti-*al*, casu-*al*, equ-*al*,
loy-*al* (= leg-*al*), roy-*al* (= reg-*al*), &c. See p. 224.

-*al* forms many new derivatives, as, festi-*al*, celesti-*al*, comic
-*al*, mathematic-*al*

-*an*, -*ain* (Lat. *-anus*). cert-*ain*, germ-*an*, germ-*ain*,
hum-*an*, me-*an*.

There are numerous adjectives in -*an*, of recent
formation that have no corresponding Latin form in
-anus. agrari-*an*, barbari-*an*, diluvi-*an*, pedestri-*an*.
See *an*, p. 224.

-*ane* (Lat. *-anus*): hum-*ane*, transmont-*ane* are
modern forms.

-ant, -ent: *err-ant*, *ramp-ant*, *trench-ant*, *obedi-ent*, *pati-ent*, &c. See -ant, -ent, p. 224.

-ar (Lat. *-aris*): *famili-ar*, *regul-ar*, *singul-ar*.

-ary (Lat. *-arius*): *contr-ary*, *necess-ary*, *second-ary*. See -ar, p. 225.

Arbitr-*ary*, disciplin-*ary*, honor-*ary*, and many English derivatives in -*ary*, having no Latin form in *-arius*.

The Lat. *-arius* is sometimes changed into *-arius*, as, *nef-arious*, *greg-ari-ous*. Sometimes *-an* is added to *-ari*, as, *agr-ari-an*, *antiqu-ari-an*, &c.

-atic (Lat. *-aticus*) *fan-atic*, *lun-atic*.

Most nouns in *-atic*, *-tic*, come directly from the Latin, as *aqu-atic*, *rus-tic*, *domes-tic*, &c. See -age, p. 224.

-ate (Lat. *-atus*). *delic-ate*, *desol-ate*, *determin-ate*, and some few other words in *-ate* are found in M. E. coming directly from the Latin. But most words with this ending are modern formations.

Had these words come from N. Fr. they would end in *-y*. Compare *privy*, *secret*, (Fr. *privé*), with *private*.
-ble, -able (Lat. *-bilis*) *accept-able*, *abomin-able*, *fee-ble*, *foi-ble* (= *fle-bilis*), *mov-able*, *sta-ble*.

The suffix *-able* is added to many Romance stems as, *agree-able*, *change-able*, *favour-able*, *deceiv-able*, &c.

It is also added to Teutonic stems as, *break-able*, *eat-able*, *laugh-able*, *sale-able*.

Terms in *-ible*, as *aud-ible*, *vis-ible*, are formed directly from the Latin.

-ble (Lat. *-plex*): *dou-ble* (= *du-ple*), *tre-ble* (= *tri-ple*).

-ese (Ital. *-ese*, Lat. *-ensis*): *Chin-ese*, *Malt-ese*. See p. 227.

-esque (Fr. *-esque*, Lat. *-iscus*). burl-*esque*, grot-*esque*, pictur-*esque*; *morrice* (dance) = mor-*esco* i.e. Moorish. This *-esque* is allied to English *-ish*, hence the forms Fren-*ch* and Dan-*ish*, in which the Fr. suffix is anglicised.

-ac (Lat. *-acus*): demoni-*ac*, mani-*ac*.

-ic (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, *-icum*).. aromat-*ic*, barbar-*ic*, frant-*ic*, schismat-*ic*. *See p. 227.

It is often combined with *-al*, as cler-*ic-al*, mag-*ic-al*, mus-*ic-al*, &c.

In Old French *icus* became *ieu*, whence our *enem-y* = Fr *ennemi*, Lat *inimicus*, Fr *p-ieu* = *p-ieu*, *-ique* is the modern Fr. form. Cp. ant-*ic* (old form), with ant-*ique* (modern derivative)

-id (Lat. *-idus*) ac-*id*, pall-*id*, tep-*id*, rig-*id*, &c.

In N Fr. this *-id* disappears or is changed Cp Eng *neat*, Fr *net*, Lat *nit-idus*. In modern learned Fr words *-ide* is used as rig-*ide*, sap-*ide*, &c.

-ile (Lat *-ilis*). frag-*ile*, ster-*ile*, &c.

-l, -le (Lat. *-ilis*, *-ilis*). cru-*el*, civ-*il*, frai-*l* (= frag-*ile*), ab-*le*, subt-*le*, gent-*le*.

-ine (Lat. *-inus*) div-*ine*, citr-*in*.

Most of the words in *-ine* are of modern formation: as, aquil-*ine*, can-*ine*, genu-*ine*, infant-*ine*, &c.

-ive (Lat. *-ivus*): able to, inclined to, act-*ive*, attent-*ive*, fugit-*ive*, pens-*ive*, &c. See⁶ *-iff*, p. 227.

In Early and Middle English these adjectives ended in *-yf*: as, *actyf*, *attentyf*, &c. The *yf* has dropped off in *hasty*, *jolly*, *testy*. Cp. *massive* with T.E. *massy*, and *bashy* = *bashful*. We have a large number of modern derivatives in *-ive*, as, coer-*ive*, conclus-*ive*, affirmat-*ive*, &c. We have one hybrid, talk-*ative*.

-lent (Lat *-lentus*) full of. corpu-²*lent*, opu-*lent*, vio-*lent*, &c.

-ory (Lat. *-orius*): amat-*ory*, mandat-*ory*, &c.

-ose (Lat. *-osus*): bellic-*ose*, joc-*ose*, mor-*ose*.

-ous (Lat. *-osus*) full, like: copi-*ous*, curi-*ous*, danger-*ous*, fam-*ous*, lepr-*ous*, &c.

-ous also represents Lat. *-us* in the following —

(1) Assidu-*ous*, continu-*ous*, ingenu-*ous*, &c

(2) Anxi-*ous*, arbore-*ous*, &c

(3) In the endings -*vorous*, -*fluous*, -*par-ous*:—omnivor-*ous*, superflu-*ous*, ovipar-*ous*, &c

The use of -ous has been much extended in modern English. It is added to adjective stems, as, alacr-*ous*, gasper-*ous*, atroci-*ous*, precipit-*ous*, carbonifer-*ous*.

It occurs in many modern derivatives, as contradict-*ious*, felicit-*ous*, joy-*ous*.

It is added to some few Teutonic roots, as murder-*ous*.

Court-*eous* = E.E. *curt-es*, O.Fr. *curt-es*, court-*es*

Boister-*ous* = M.E. *bostois*, *boist-ous*, *bostuys*, from Welsh *bwyystus*, rough, rude

Right-*eous*. Here -*eous* is a corruption of -*wise*. See § 238, p. 213.

Wondr-*ous*. Here -*ous* is for the adverbial suffix -*s*

"This matter is *wonders* precious."

Everyman, O.E. *Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 99

Wonder (used as an adverb) = O.E. *wundr-un*

Wondr-*ous-ly* = *wunder-s-ly* = M.E. *wonderly*.

"Of the elements so *wonderly* formed"

The Four Elements, ed. Hazlitt, p. 16.

-t, -te (Lat. *-tus*), discreet-*t*, straight-*t*, strait-*t*, modes-*t*, hones-*t*, chas-*te*, mu-*te*.

*Words like *eloq*, *perfect*, *distinct*, &c. have come direct from the Latin.

In Fr. the *c* disappears before *t*. Cp. *strait* and *strict*.

-und, -ond (Lat. *-undus*) ro-und (= rot-und), joc-und, sec-ond.

-y (N Fr. *-if*, Lat. *-ivus*) We find hast-y, joll-y, mass-y, test-y.

See -ive, p. 234

III. Verbal Suffixes.

-ate (Lat. *-atus*) forms verbs from nouns and adjectives: assassin-ate, accentu-ate, filtr-ate, superannu-ate, &c.

-ise, -ize (Lat. *-izare*, Fr. *-iser*, Gr. *-ίζω*) forms verbs from nouns and adjectives: colon-ise, pulver-ise, civil-ise, fertil-ise.

-ish (Lat. *-esc-o*, Fr. *-iss* in the pres. part. of verbs in *-ir*): establ-ish, flour-ish, fin-ish, nour-ish, pol-ish, &c.

-fy (Lat. *-ficare*, Fr. *-fier*): edi-fy, magni-fy, signi-fy.

245 COMPOSITION WITH ROMANIC PREFIXES.

Words with these prefixes are divisible into two classes, (1) those that have come from the Latin through the Norman, and (2) those that have come from the French through the English.

A, av (Fr. *a*, *av*, Lat. *ab*, *abs*, away from).—

(1) A-vaunt (Fr. *a-vant*, Lat. *ab-ante*), a-d-vance, a-d-vantage, a-vert, a-bridge, a-s-soil (*absolve*), abs-tain, ab-ound, ab-use.

(2) Ab-dicate, ab-sent, abs-cond, &c.

A, ad (O Fr. *ad*, *a*, Fr. *à*, Lat. *ad*, *ab*) —

By assimilation *ad-* becomes *ac-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*

(1) **A-bate**, **ac-quant** (M.Lat. *ad-cognitare*), **ac-quit**, **ac-cord**, (O.Fr. *a comter*), **a-c-count**.

A-chieve, **ac-cuse**, **a-d-venture**, (M.E. *a-venture*), **ad-journ** (M.E. *ajorne*), **ad-join**, **ad-verse**, **ad-versary**, **af-firm**, **af-fiance**, **af-finity**, **af-ford**, **a-gree**, **ag-grieve**, (M.E. *ag-regge* and *a-greve*), **a-d-monish** (M.E. *a-moneste*), **a-mount**, **a-merce**, **al-ledge**, **al-ly**, **al-low**, **ap-parel**, **ap-pear**, **ap-pease**, **ap-ply**, **ap-proach**, **ar-rive**, **as-sail**, **as-sault** (M.E. *asaute*), **as-size**, **as-suage**, **as-semble**, **at-tain**, **a-venge**, **a-vow**.

Cp the later loans *adieu*, *adroit*, *alarm*, *alert*, *apart*, &c

(2) **Ad-apt**, **ac-cept**, **ac-cumulate**, **ag-gravate**, **al-leviate**, **an-nex**, &c.

An, ante (Fr. *ans*, *ains*, Lat. *ante*).—

(1) **An-cestor** (M.E. *ancessoure*), **an-cestry**, **v-an-guard** (= Fr. *av-ant-garde*)

(2) **Ante-cede**, **ante-meridian**, **ante-chamber**.

(3) **Ante-date**, **anti-cipate**, seem formed on the model of the Fr. *anti-dater*, *anti-ciper*.

Circum, circu (Lat. *circum*, around) —

Circum-cise, **circu-it**, are found in M.E.

Modern compounds with this prefix are very common: *circum-scribe*, *circum-stance*, &c

¹ **Co, com, con** (Fr. *co*, *com*, *con*, Lat. *cum*, with):—

Com becomes col before *l*, cor before *r*, and co before vowels. . .

(1) **Col-late**, **com-mand**, **com-mon**, **com-pany**,

De, dis, di (Fr. *dés, dē*, Lat. *dis, di*, asunder, in two, difference, negation):—

In E.E. and M.E. the prefix *dis* has its N.Fr. form *des* or *de*

(1) *De-part, de-fy, de-lay, dis-cover, dis-charge, disguise, dis-honour, display, dis-turb, dis-please, dispute, &c.*

(2) *Dis-cern, di-gest, dif-fer, &c.*

(3) *Deluge* = mod. Fr. *déluge*, Lat. *di-luvium*

(4) The following are hybrids. *dis-believe* (= mis-believe), *dis-like* (= mislike), *dis-own, &c.*

E, es, ex (Fr. *es, e*, Lat. *ex*, out of, from):—

(1) *E-late, e-lection, as-say, es-say, es-cape, issue, es-pecial, s-pecial, s-ample* (= *ex-ample*), *ens-ample, ex-amine, ex-cite, ex-cuse, ex-ile, a-mend* (= *e-mend*), *a-fraid* (Lat. *exfrigidare*) *a-bash* = O.Fr. *es-bahir*.

(2) *Ex-alt, e-lect, ex-ecute, ex-empt, ex-pect, &c.; ex-emperor, ex-mayor*

(3) *Efface, élite* (= *elect*), are from modern French. *Extra* (Lat. *extra*, beyond.)

(1) *Extra-ordinary, extra-vagant.*

(2) *Extra-work, extra-freight, are hybrids.*

Em, en, in (Fr. *em, en*, Lat. *in*, in, into, on) —

(1) *Em-balm, em-bellish, em-brace, en-chant, en-counter, en-cumber, en-dite, en-dow, en-gage, en-force, en-hance, en-join, en-joy, en-rich, en-tice, en-treat, en-viron, en-vy, &c.; an-oint, am-bush, im-pair, im-prison, il-lusion, in-cense, in-cline, in-quire* (*en-quire*).

Many words once beginning with *en-* now have *in-*.

- (2) *In*-nate, *il*-lumine, *im*-migrate, &c.
 (3) Hybrids are *em*-bolden, *en*-shrine, *en*-dear, &c.

In (Lat. *in*, not) —

- (1) *In*-nocent, *in*-constance, *in*-fant, *im*-perfect (= M E *imparfit*)
 (2) It is prefixed to nouns, adjectives, and verbs.—
 (a) *In*-convenience, *im*-piety, *il*-liberality.
 (b) *In*-cautious, *im*-politic, *il*-legal, *ir*-regular.
 (c) *In*-capacitate, *in*-dispose, *il*-legalize, *im*-mortalize.

Un often takes the place of *in*, as *un*-able, *un*-apt, *un*-certain, &c.

Enter, inter, intro (O.Fr. *enter*; Fr. *entre*, Lat. *inter, intro*, within, between) —

- (1) *Enter*-prize, *enter*-tain, *inter*-dict (= M E *enter-dite*), *inter*-change (M.E. *enter-change*)
 (2) *Inter*-cept, *inter*-sect, *intro*-duce, &c.

Ob (Lat. *ob*, in front of, against) —

- (1) *Ob*-lige, *ob*-ey, *oc*-cupy, *of*-fer, *of*-fend, *of*-fence, *of*-fice, *op*-pose
 (2) *Ob*-ject, *ob*-struct, *oc*-cur, *of*ficiate, &c.

Per (O.Fr. *per*, Fr. *par*, Lat. *per*, through) :—

- (1) *Per*-ceive, *per*-form, *per*-ish, *par*-don, *pur*-sue
 (2) *Per*-jure, *per*-secute, *pel*-lucid, *pol*-lute, &c.

Post (Lat. *post*, after) —

- (1) *Puny* = Fr. *puîné*, O.Fr. *puis-né*, Lat. *post natus*.
 (2) *Post*-pone, *post*-date, *post*-script, &c.

Pre (Fr. *pré*, Lat. *præ*, before).—

(1) *Pre*-cept, *pre*-face, *pre*-late, *pre*-sence, *pre*-tend, *pro*-vost, *pre*-ach (= Lat. *prædicare*).

(2) Modern formations are numerous: *pre*-dict, *pre*-cinct, *pre*-announce, &c.

Preter (Fr. *préter*; Lat. *prater*, past).—

(1) *Preter*-ite, *preter*-mit.

(2) *Preter*-natural, *preter*-perfect.

Par, pur, pro (Fr. *par*, *pour*, Lat. *pro*, forth, forward, before).—

(1) *Por*-tray, *pur*-chase, *pur*-pose, *pur*-sue, *pur*-vey, *pro*-cede, *pro*-cess, *pro*-cure, *pro*-nounce.

(2) *Pro*-vide, *pro*-pose, *pro*-consul, *pro*-noun.

(3) *Por*-trait = Fr. *pour*-trait

Re, red (Fr. *re*, Lat. *red*, *re*, back, again).—

(1) *Re*-bell, *re*-ceive, *re*-claim, *re*-creant, *re*-cover, *re*-join, *re*-nounce, *re*-member, *re*-pair, *re*-pent, *re*-prove, *re*-quire, *re*-store, *re*-semble, *re*-treat, *re*-ally (Lat. *re-alligare*), *re*-n-der (Lat. *red-dere*), *red*-ound.

(2) Modern formations: *re*-probate, *re*-duce, *re*-act, &c.

(3) *Re*-but = Fr. *re-buter*

(4) Hybrids. *re*-build, *re*-mind, *re*-new, &c.

Retro (Fr. *rière*, Lat. *retro*).—

(1) *Rear*-ward, *arrear*, *rear*. Cp. M.E. *averagt* (arrears)

(2) *Retro*-grade, *retro*-spect, &c.

Se, sed (Fr. *se*, Lat. *sed*, *se*, apart, away).—

- (1) *Se-ver, se-veral*.
- (2) *Se-clude, se-parate, sed-ition, &c.*

Sub, so (O Fr. *so*; Fr. *se, su, sou*, Lat. *sub*, under, up from below) :—

- (1) *Sub-tle, suc-cour* (M.E. *socour*), *suc-ceed, suf-fer, sum-mons, sup-pose, sus-tain, so-journ, &c.*
- (2) *Sub-jection, sus-cinct, sug-gest, &c.* It denotes (a) diminution, as *sub-tyed*, (b) of a lower order, as *sub-committee*
- (3) *Hybrids: sub-let, sub-kingdom.*

Sur, super (Fr. *sur*, Lat. *super*, above, beyond) :—

- (1) *Sur-coat, sur-face, sur-feit, sur-plice, sur-name, sur-vey; super-flu-ous, super-scription*, which occur in M.E., are directly from the Latin.
- (2) Modern forms are *sur-prise, sur-pass, sur-charge, super-ficies, super-scribe, &c., sunnyside = Fr. soubresaut, Lat. super-saltum.*

Tres, tra, trans (O Fr. *tres*, Fr. *tré, tra*, Lat. *trans*, across) :—

- (1) *Tres-pass, tra-itor, trea-son. tra-vel, tra-verse, trans-figure, trans-form, trans-late, trans-migration.*
- (2) *Trans-cription, trans-port, tra-dition, &c.*, are modern forms.

Ultra (Lat. *ultra*, beyond) :—

- (1) *Out-rage.*
- (2) *Ultra-liberal.*

Vis, vice (Fr. *vis*, Lat. *vice*, instead of) .—

(1) Vic-ar.

(2) *Vis*-count, *vice*-roi, &c

Bis, bi (Lat. *bis*, twice ; *bi*ni, two by two) .—

(1) None.

(2) *Bis*-sextile, *bi*-ennial, *bi*n-ocular.

(3) *Biscuit* is modern French *biscuit*, Lat. *bis-coctum*.

Demi (Fr. *demi* ; Lat. *dimidium*, half) :—

(1) *Demi*-god, *demi*-quaver

Semi (Lat. *semi*, half) .

(1) *Semi*-circle, *semi*-column.

Mal, mau, male (Fr. *mal*, *mau*, Lat. *male*, ill) .—

(1) *Mau*-gre, *mal*-ady.

(2) *Male*-diction, *mal*-evolent.

(3) *Mal*-treat, *mal*-content.

Non (Lat. *non*, not) :—

(1) Noun-power impotence. Chaucer's *Boethius*,
p. 75.

(2) *Non*-sense, *non*-existent.

(3) *Non*-chalance, *non*-pareil.

Mis (Fr. *mes* ; Lat. *minus*, less) —

(1) *Mis*-chance (M.E. *mescheance*), *mis*-chief (M.E. *meschief*), (2) *mis*-fortune and *mis*-nomer are modern analogous forms.

(3) *Mis*-alliance.

Pen (Fr. *pén* ; Lat. *pene*, almost) :—

Pen-insula, *pén*-ultimate.

Sans, sise (Fr. *sans*, Lat. *sine*, without) —

(2) *Sine-cure*, *sin-cere*.

(3) *Sans-culotte*, *sans-culottism*.

246. Greek Prefixes.

Nearly all compounds with Greek prefixes are of late origin.

An-, a- (*ἀν, ἀ*), *negative* like Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*.
an-archy, an-aesthetic, a-pathy.

Amphi- (*ἀμφί*), *about, on both sides*. Cp. Lat. *am*,
amb, O.E. *umbe, ymbe*, *about*. amphi-bious, amphi-
theatre.

Ana- (*ἀνά*), *up, up to, again, back*. ana-logy, ana-
lysis, an-ec-dote.

Anti- (*ἀντί*), *opposite to, against*. anti-dote, anti-
pathy, anti-thesis, ant-arctic.

Apo-, ap- (*ἀπό*), *away from, from*. Cp. Lat. *ab*, Eng.
off: apo-logy, apo-strophe, apo-gee, apo-crypha, ap-
helion.

Apocalypse, from the Latin, occurs in Middle English; also
pocalips (*Piers Plowman*, B p 215).

Arch-, archi- (*ἀρχή*), *chief, head*: arch-heretic,
arch-ism, archi-tect.

Shakespeare uses *arch* as a root in *King Lear*, II. 1, "My
worthy arch." *Arch-bishop* occurs in M. E. Chaucer has *archi-
wyves* (*Clerkes Tale*), *archi-deknes* (*Prologue*). The last existed
in O.E.

Auto-, aut (*αὐτο*), *self*: auto-crag, auto-graph.

Cata-, cath-, cat- (*κατά*), *down, downwards*.

about: cata-ract, cata-strophe, cath-olic, cat-hedral, cat-egorize.

Dia- (διά), through: dia-meter, dia-gonal.

Di- (δι) Cp. Lat. *dis*, Eng. *to*: di-syllable, (often mis-spelt *dissyllable*) di-phthong.

Dys- (δυσ) ill: dys-peptic, dys-entery.

Ec-, ex- (ἐκ, ἐξ) out, forth, cp. Lat. *ex*: ec-centric, ec-lectic, ex-orcism.

En- (ἐν), in. Cp. Lat. *in*: en-thusiasm, en-tomology, en-comium, em-piric, em-phasis, el-liptical.

Epi-, ep- (ἐπί), upon, on, by. epi-demic, epi-taph, epi-tome, ep-och.

Eu-, well. eu-logy, eu-phony.

U in *Utopia* is for *ov*, not *ev*.

Evangelist occurs in M.E. and comes through the Latin.

Hemi- (ἡμι), half: hemi-stich, hemi-sphere.

Hyper- (ὑπέρ), above, beyond. Cp. Lat. *super*, Eng. *over*: hyper-bole, hyper-critical.

Hypo-, hyp- (ὑπό), under. Cp. Lat. *sub*: hypo-crite, hypo-thesis, hyp-hen.

Meta-, met- (μετά), after, *trans*: meta-phorical, meta-morphosis, (cp. Latin *trans-form*), met-hod.

Mono-, mon- (μόνο), single, alone: mono-graph, mon-archy. Also *monk* = O.E. *munec*.

Pan- (πάν), all. pan-theistic, pan-acea.

Para-, par- (παρά), beside, against: para-dox, para-site, para-phrase, par-helion, para-ble. Cp. *parley*, from Fr. through Latin.

Peri- (περί), round. Cp. Lat. *per*, Eng. *for*: peri-meter, peri-odical, peri-phrasis.

Pro- (πρό), before. Cp. Lat. *pro*, Eng. *fore*: pro-logue, pro-gnostic.

Pro-phet and *pro-phesy*, *prologue*, *proem* occur in M E. *Pro-*
gramme is Fr.

Pros- (*πρός*), towards. *pros-elyte*, *pros-ody*.

Syn- (*σύν*), with. *syn-opsis*, *syn-tax*, *sym-pathy*,
syl-logism, *sy-stem*.

247. We have some few Greek suffixes that have
come from Latin though Norman-French. See suffixes,
-ic (pp. 227, 234), -in (p. 228), -ist (p. 228) -sy (p.
231), -ize (p. 236).

APPENDIX.

*Note to p. 68. he and she. In M.E. we find he and she used as nouns.

"Queþer-sum it war *seo* or *he*,
To godd be-taght þan suld it be."

C. MUNDI, C. l. 10205.

Note to p. 96 *former* = O.E. *forma*, M.E. *forme*, the *r* seems to have arisen out of the final *e*; *former* occurs in the *Gottingen* text of the *Cursor Mundi*; but *Fairfax* has *forme* and *Cotton* form See *Cursor Mundi*, (ed Morris, p 526, l 9156).

Note to p. 122. What and aught: "gif he *hwæt* dælan wyle" = "if he *awht* delan wule." (See *O. E. Hom.* 1. p. 297 and p. 103.)

Note to p. 189. a = of. Cp. the *Gottingen* and *Cotton* texts of the *C. Mundi*, l 8968.

"Hu all þis world sal wite *awar* "

COTTON.

"Hou all þis world suld wit *of way* "

GETTINGEN.

"Wendaþ mīn heafōð *ofidune*, forþon þe mīn Drihten Hæland Crist of heofenum *adune* to eorþan astag "

"Turn my head *adown* (downwards), because my Lord Jesus Christ came from heaven *adown* to earth."—*Bluckling Homilies*, ed. Morris, p. 191.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the pages.

- A, 19, 36, 40, 188.
 Abide, 147.
 About, 196.
 Accent, 20, 56.
 Adjective, 96, 97.
 Adverb, 192.
 Affix, 18.
 Agglutination, 54.
 Ago, 158.
 Alder-lifest, 51, 88.
 All and Some, 123.
 Alms, 75.
 Along of, 198, 218.
 Alphabet, 35, 39, 40.
 Also, 192.
 American words in English, 26.
 Amends, 76.
 Among, 197.
 An = if, 200.
 An, article, 96, 97.
 Analytical languages, 17.
 Anomalous verbs, 167.
 Anon, 217.
 Any, 126.
 Apocope, 51.
 Arabic words in English, 26.
 Aryan, 1, 5.
 Article, indefinite, 96.
 definite, 114.
 As, relative, 121.
 As, adverb, 192.
 At, before infinitive, 218.
 Aught, 125.
 Augustine's mission, 11.
 Auxiliary verbs, 56, 185.
 B, 43, 46, 51.
 Be, 168—170.
 Belief, 20.
 Bequeath, past tense of, 144.
 Best, 93.
 Better, 93.
 Bit, verb, 147.
 Body, 123.
 Both, 98, 99.
 Bound (for journey) 9.
 Bridal, 215.
 Bridegroom, 69.
 But, 196.
 By, Be, 188, 189.
 Can, 171.
 Cardinal numbers. *See* Numerals.
 Case, loss of case-endings, 56, 79, 80.

- Case, 78
 absolute, 82
 possessive, 81
 dative, 79
 Causative verbs, 129.
 Chaucer, 14, 16.
 Chester, 10.
 Chicken, 55, 61, 63.
 Childer, 73
 Chinese words in English, 26
 Classical words in English, 10,
 21, 30
 Cleave, 148
 Cognates, 54.
 Conquest, Norman, effects on
 English, 13, 16
 D, 43, 51.
 Danish words in English, 9
 Dare, 173
 Dative, absolute, 79
 infinitive, 164.
 Decay, phonetic, 20, 45
 Degrees of comparison, 90
 Demonstrative pronouns, 114.
 Denials, 43
 Derivatives, 54
 Do, 159, 183, 186.
 Dialects, 31.
 Digraphs, 40.
 Diphthongs, 36, 39.
 Distributives, 98
 Drake, 69.
 Dutch, meaning of, 4, 5
 words in English, 26
 E, 19, 36.
 Each, 126
 Early English, 33
 Eaves, 76.
 Either, 127, 201
 Elder, Eldest, 92
 Else, 127
 Empress, 13, 67
 English, 6.
 Enough, enow, 128
 Epenthesis, 51.
 Epithesis, 51
 Ere, 95
 Ess, suffix, 65, 66
 Euphonic changes, 42 &
 Every, 126.
 Eyren, 73
 F, 44.
 Farthest, 94.
 Fell, (hill) 9
 Feminine gender, 18, 63
 Few, 100.
 First, 94.
 Furth, 10.
 Foreign plurals, 77
 Formation of words, 204.
 Formative elements, 54.
 Former, 96, 247
 French words (modern) in
 English, 25.
 Further, 95
 Future tense, 134.
 G, 20, 44
 Gander, 69
 Gender, 19
 of nouns, 61.
 of pronouns, 116.
 Genitive suffixes, 80.
 German, High, 4.
 Low, 4.
 German words in English, 26

N, 46, 51.

Nam, 169.

Nasals, 37

Naught, 125.

Nay, ne, no, 191

Need, verb, 185.

Needs, 187

Neither, 127, 201.

Nephew, 69

Neuter gender, *see* gender

News, 76.

Next, 92

Niece, 69.

Nill, 176

No, 125.

Nobody, 123.

None, 97, 125

Norman-French words, 13,

21.

 prefixes, 236

 suffixes, 223

Nostril, 215.

Not, 125, 192.

Nothing, 125

Nought, 125

Nouns, 61.

 verbal, 133

Number, 70, 136.

Numerals, 96.

Nurse, 67.

O, 36, 39

Objective case, 79

Odds, 76.

Of, 56, 193, 195, 217.

Off, 56.

Old English, 33.

On, 96.

Once, 187.

One, 96, 124.

One=*self*, 111.

Or, conj., 201.

Or = *ere*, 197

Orchard, 215.

Ordinals, *see* numerals.

Orthography, faults of English,

40

Other, 99, 201.

Otherlike, 117.

Our, Ours, 114.

Over, 95, 196

Owe, 179.

Own, 180, 184.

Oxen, 55, 73

P, 43, 46.

Pains, 76.

Participles, 168

Particles, 217.

Parts of speech, 53

Passive voice, 130.

Pease, 75.

Periods of the English lan-

guage, 33.

Permutation of sounds, 43

Persian words in English, 26.

Person-endings of verbs, 159

Personal pronouns, 102.

Pesen, 73.

Plural of compounds, 78.

Plural of nouns, 70

 adjectives, 87.

Portuguese words in English,

25.

Possessive case, 79, 81.

Prefixes, English, 217, 221.

 Romanic, 236.

 Greek, 195.

Prepositions, 195.

Pronominal adverbs, 190

Pronouns, 101

Pronouns, adjective, 112.

 demonstrative, 114.

 indefinite, 122

 interrogative, 118

 personal, 102.

 relative, 120

 reflexive, 110.

Prothesis, 51

Pure English words, 27

Q, 38.

Queen, 69.

Quoth, 144.

R, 44, 51.

Rather, 93.

Reduplication, 55, 137

Relational words, 17

Revival of learning, 21

Riches, 79.

Romantic languages, 3

Romantic dialects, 3

 prefixes, 236

 suffixes, 223

Roots, 54, 204.

S, 18, 44, 51.

Same, 117.

Saxons, 6

Scandinavian languages, 3, 9

Sclavonic languages, 3.

Seethe, 149

Seldom, 187.

Self, 110.

Self-same, 112.

Sempster, 64.

Several, 128.

Shall (to owe), 175.

Shaw, 10.

Shoon, 73.

She, 68, 107.

Sibilants, 38, 44.

Small-pox, 76.

So, 117.

Softening of gutturals, 20, 45.

Some, 122

Songster, 64.

Songstress, 65.

Sounds, classification of, 37.

 changes of 42.

 assimilation of, 44

Spanish words in English, 24.

Spinster, 63.

Spirants, 37, 48

Ster, suffix, 18, 19, 63.

Street, 10

Strong verbs, 136, 137.

Such, 117.

Suffixes, adverbial, 187, 213

 plural, 70.

 of pronouns, 117.

 of verbs, 159.

 English, 204.

 Roman, 223.

Sundry, 128

Superlative degree, 91, 96

 in *as*, 96

Sware, 145.

Swine, 74.

T, 43, 46.

Table of consonant sounds,

 38.

 Grimm's Law, 48.

Tenses, 135.

Tapster, 64.

Ten, 97.

Tense, 134.

Teuton, Teutonic, 4.

Teutonic languages, 3

That, 116

The adverb, 191.

 definite article, 102, 109,

 114.

 instrumental, 115.

Their, 184

Ther, comparative suffix, 97.

These, 116.

They, 107.

Thilk, 117

Thine, Thy, 112, 113.

This, 116.

Thorough, 56, 196.

Through, 56, 196.

Those, 116.

Thou, 191.

Till, 198.

To, 56.

- Too, 56
 Transitive verbs, 129
 Trills, 37, 44.
 Turkish words in English, 26.
 Twain, 97.
 Twelve, 97
 Twenty, 97.

 U, 36
 Ulfilas, 5
 Under, 196
 Unto, 197
 Utter,

 V, 43
 Verbal nouns, 153
 Verbs, classification of, 129.
 anomalous, 167.
 causative, 129
 conjugation of, 136
 impersonal, 130
 intransitive, 129
 inflections of, 160
 moods of, 131.
 number of, 136
 passive, 130.
 strong, 129
 transitive, 129
 weak, 136, 153.
 Vixen, 62.
 Vocabulary English, composite
 nature of,
 Voice, 130.
 Vowel-change, 55, 63, 72

 Vowels, 36, 39. .

 Was, 143
 Weak verbs, 136, 153
 Welsh, 5.
 Went, 158.
 What, interrogative pronoun,
 119
 relative, 121.
 indefinite pronoun, 122.
 for, 119
 Whether, 119, 120.
 Which, 119, 120
 Whilom, 187.
 What, 125, *see* Aught.
 Who, indefinite pronoun, 122
 Wickliffe, 16
 Widow, } 19, 69.
 Widower, }
 Wight, 122, 123, 125.
 Will, 176.
 Wit, 182
 Wizzard, 66.
 Witch, 66
 With, 196.
 Wol, 176
 Worse, } 93.
 Worst, }
 Worth, verb, 170.
 Writhe, 147

 Ye, 105.
 Yea, 191.
 Yes, 191.
 Yon, yond, yonder, 117, 191.
 e

ORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS,

EDITED BY

EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.

The following are now ready —

VOL I —GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D C L.
Fourth Edition 18mo. 3s 6d

VOL II —HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By EDITH THOMPSON Fourth Edition 18mo. 2s 6d

VOL. III —HISTORY OF SCOTLAND By MARGARET MACARTHUR. 18mo 2s

6L. IV.—HISTORY OF ITALY. By the Rev. W. HUNT, M A 18mo. 3s.

VOL V —HISTORY OF GERMANY. By JAMES SIMS, M.A 18mo. 3s

In preparation.—

HISTORY OF FRANCE By the Rev. J. R. GREEN, M A

HISTORY OF GREECE. By J ANNAN BRYCE, B A.

~~H~~ISTORY OF AMERICA. By J A. DOYLE.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

MACMILLAN AND CO

SCIENCE CLASS-BOOKS.

ANATOMY—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ANATOMY By ST GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S. With upwards of 400 Illustrations 18mo 6s 6d

ASTRONOMY.—POPULAR ASTRONOMY, with Illustrations By SIR G. B. AIRY, CB, Astronomer Royal New Edition 18mo 4s 6d

ASTRONOMY.—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY With Illustrations By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With Coloured Diagram. New Edition 18mo 5s 6d

QUESTIONS on the SAME, 1s 6d

BOTANY—LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY
1 4 6

CHEMISTRY—LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY By Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S. With 110 Illustrations and Chromo-lithograph of the Solar Sp. New Edition 18mo 4s 6d

CHINESE—LESSONS IN CHINESE With Preface by

LOGIC—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC, New

PHYSIOLOGY—LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY

QUESTIONS on the SAME 1s 6d

PHYSICS—LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS, With Coloured Diagram 18mo 4s 6d

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS By MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT With Questions New Edition 18mo 2s 6d

STEAM: AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE By JOHN PERRY, B.E., late Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College With numerous Illustrations, Examples, and Exercises 18mo 4s 6d

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

SCIENCE PRIMERS

FOR

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.

UNDER THE JOINT EDITORSHIP OF

Professors HUXLEY, ROSCOE, and BALFOUR STEWART.

PRIMER OF CHEMISTRY By H E ROSCOE,
F R S, Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Man-
chester 18mo *Third Edition* 1s

PRIMER OF PHYSICS By BALFOUR STEWART,
F R S, Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College,
Manchester 18mo *Third Edition* 1s.

PRIMER OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By
A GEIKIE, LL D, F R S, Murchison Professor of
Geology and Mineralogy in the University of Edinburgh.
With numerous Illustrations 18mo cloth *Fourth Edition*
1s

PRIMER OF GEOLOGY. By PROFESSOR GEIKIE,
F R S. With Illustrations 18mo *Second Edition* 1s

PRIMER OF PHYSIOLOGY By MICHAEL FOSTER,
M D, F R S With Illustrations 18mo 1s

PRIMER OF ASTRONOMY By J. N LOCKYER,
F R S With Illustrations 18mo 1s

Preparation.

INTRODUCTORY. By PROFESSOR HUXLEY, F.R.S.

PRIMER OF BOTANY. By J D. HOOKER, C.B.,
F.R.S.

MACMILLAN & CO., LONDON.

THE REV. BARNARD SMITH

ARITHMETICAL WORKS.

ARITHMETIC and ALGEBRA. 13th Edition.
Crown 8vo 10s 6d

ARITHMETIC. For the Use of Schools New
Edition Crown 8vo 4s 6d KEY, 8s 6d.

EXERCISES in ARITHMETIC With ANSWERS.
Crown 8vo. Imp. cloth 2s 6d Or, sold separately, as
follows —Part I, 1s, Part II, 1s ANSWERS, 6d.

SHILLING BOOK of ARITHMETIC. For
National and Elementary Schools. 18mo Or, separately
—Part I, 2d, Part II, 3d, Part III, 7d With
ANSWERS, 18mo. 1s 6d—KEY, 4s 6d

EXAMINATION PAPERS in ARITHMETIC.
In Four Parts New Edition 18mo 1s 6d The Same,
with ANSWERS, 18mo. 1s 9d—KEY, 18mo 4s 6d

SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK of ARITHMETIC 18mo.
3s Or Parts I and II, 10d each, and Part III, 1s —
KEY, complete, 18mo 6s. 6d, or Three Parts, 2s
each

THE METRIC SYSTEM of ARITHMETIC: its
Principles and Application With numerous Examples
Written expressly for Standard V in National Schools.
Fourth Edition 18mo cloth sewed 3d

A CHART of the METRIC SYSTEM. For School
Use. The Metric System On Roller, 1s 6d, on Roller,
1s 6d With a full-length Metre
Measure, subdivided into Decimètres, Centimètres, and
Millimètres Also, a small Chart, on Card, 1d.

EASY LESSONS in ARITHMETIC Combining
Exercises and Questions. 18mo cloth sewed 9d

Diagrams for School Walls in preparation.

MACMILLAN AND CO, LONDON.

September, 1874.

LOGUE of EDUCATIONAL BOOKS,
Published by MACMILLAN and Co.,
Bedford Street, Strand, London.

CLASSICAL.

Æschylus.—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The Greek text adopted in this Edition is based upon that of Wellauer.
"A most useful feature in the work is the Analysis of Muller's celebrated dissertations."—BRITISH QUARTERLY REVIEW.

Aristotle.—AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Coll. Cambridge. 8vo. 14s.

ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTICAL ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

"It is not only scholarlike and careful, it is also perspicuous."—GUARDIAN. *"A work of great skill"*—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Aristophanes.—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"My wish," says the author, "has been to produce a translation of 'The Birds' which may be agreeable to the taste of English readers. For this purpose I have chosen English metres."

Blackie.—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Professor of Greek in the Univ. of Edinburgh. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"Why should the old practice of conversing in Latin and Greek be altogether discarded?"—PROFESSOR JOWETT.

The present little volume furnishes a series of twenty-five graduated dialogues in parallel columns of Greek and English on a great variety of interesting subjects.

Cicero.—THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. With Introduction and Notes. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

"On the whole we have rarely met with an edition of a classical author which so thoroughly fulfils the requirements of a modern school."

Cicero—continued.**THE ORATIONS OF CICERO AGAINST CATILINA.**

Notes and an Introduction. From the German of KARL HALM, with additions by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"IT IS A PLEASURE TO READ THESE ORATIONS IN THE ORIGINAL, AND TO SEE THE NOTES AND INTRODUCTION BY MR. WILKINS."

"THESE ORATIONS ARE OF GREAT INTEREST TO THE STUDENT OF LATIN, AND TO THE READER OF THE HISTORY OF ROME. THE NOTES AND INTRODUCTION BY MR. WILKINS ARE OF GREAT VALUE."

Demosthenes.—ON THE CROWN. By J. H. WATSON, Esq., Barrister at Law. Translated by J. H. WATSON, Esq., Barrister at Law. With a Commentary by J. H. WATSON, Esq., Barrister at Law. 8vo. 3s.

"A neat and useful edition."—*ATHENÆUM*.

Greenwood.—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR. By J. GREENWOOD, Esq., Barrister at Law. 8vo. 3s.

Hodgson.—MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION. A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. New Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

Homer's Odyssey.—THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS. With a Commentary by J. H. WATSON, Esq., Barrister at Law. Professor of Latin at Cambridge. 8vo. 3s.

Horace.—THE WORKS OF HORACE. By J. H. WATSON, Esq., Barrister at Law. 8vo. 3s.

Juvenal.—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Vol. I. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Or Parts I and II. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. each.

"A painstaking and critical edition."—*SPECTATOR*. "For ripe scholarship, extensive acquaintance with Latin literature, and familiar knowledge of continental criticism, ancient and modern, it is unsurpassed among English editions."—*EDINBURGH REVIEW*.

A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS,

According to the arrangement of Curtius' Greek Grammar.
By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Fellow and late Lecturer of Brasenose College, Oxford, one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo. cloth. New Edition. 1s.

The system of this table has been borrowed from the excellent Greek Grammar of Dr. Curtius.

Mayor (John E. B.)—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Oxford. 8vo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

Mayor (Joseph B.) GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Oxford. 8vo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

Nixon

Peile (John, M.A.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Oxford. 8vo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

Plato.—THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. L. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. Third Edition, with Vignette Portraits of Plato and Socrates, engraved by JEENS from an Antique Gem. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

An introductory notice supplies some account of the life of Plato, and the translation is preceded by an elaborate analysis. "A book which any reader, whether acquainted with the original or not, can peruse with assurance as well as profit."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Plautus.—THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS. With Notes Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow.

able and exact; may be perused with pleasure by all, and to advantage by the classical student.—ATHENÆUM.

Theophrastus.—THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS. An English Translation from a Revised Text. With Introductory Notes. By R. C. IRVING, M.A., D.Litt. (1890). 8vo. 6s. 6d. *Mr. Irving's translation is a most valuable addition to the literature of the subject. It is a most accurate and elegant rendering of the text, and is well adapted for the use of the student and the general reader.*—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Thring.—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. *"Very well suited to young students."*—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

A CONSTRUING BOOK. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Thucydides.—THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION. Being Books VI. and VII. of Thucydides, with Notes. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. By the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

This edition is mainly a grammatical one. "The notes are excellent and of the kind. Mr. Frost seldom passes over a difficulty, and what he says is always to the point."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

Virgil.—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A. and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6d.

The original has been faithfully rendered, and paraphrase altogether avoided. At the same time, the translators have endeavoured to adapt the book to the use of the English reader. "A more complete edition of Virgil in English it is scarcely possible to conceive than the scholarly work before us."—GLOBE.

Wright.—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

HELLENICA; OR, A HISTORY OF GREECE IN GREEK, as related by Diodorus and Thucydides; being a First Greek Reading Book, with explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. Third Edition, with a Vocabulary. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

"A good plan well executed."—GUARDIAN.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; OR, THE FORM AND USE OF WORDS in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Wright—*continued*

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME An Easy Narrative from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages, being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes. Fifth Edition. Fcap 8vo 3s With Vocabulary, 3s 6d

"The Notes are abundant, explicit, and full of such grammatical and other information as boys require" —ATHENÆUM

FIRST LATIN STEPS OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE Crown 8vo 5s

ATTIC PRIMER Arranged for the Use of Beginners Extra fcap 8vo 4s 6d

MATHEMATICS.

Airy —Works by SIR G B AIRY K C B Astronomer Royal —
ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS Designed for the Use of Students in the Universities With Diagrams New Edition Crown 8o cloth. 5s 6d

ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINATION OF OBSERVATIONS Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS Designed for the Use of Students in the University New Edition Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS With Mathematical Elements of Music Designed for the Use of Students of the University Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged Crown 8vo 9s

A TREATISE OF MAGNETISM Designed for the use of Students in the University Crown 8vo 9s 6d

Airy (Osmund). — **A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL OPTICS** Adapted for the use of the Higher Classes in Schools By OSMUND AIRY, B A, one of the Mathematical Masters in Wellington College Extra fcap 8vo 3s 6d

"Carefully and lucidly written, and rendered as simple as possible by the use in all cases of the most elementary form of investigation." —ATHENÆUM

Bayma. — **THE ELEMENTS OF MOLECULAR MECHANICS** By JOSEPH BAYMA, S J, Professor of Philosophy, Stonyhurst College. Demy 8vo cloth. 10s 6d

Beasley. — **AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLANE TRIGONOMETRY.** With Examples By R D. BEASLEY, M A, Head Master of Grantham Grammar School. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged Crown 8vo cloth 4s 6d.

H (Hugh).—ELEMENTS OF PLANE GEOMETRY, for the use of the Junior Class of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. By HUGH BLACKBURN, M.A., Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Boole.—Works by G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. New and Revised Edition. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. cloth 14s.

"A treatise incomparably superior to any other elementary book on the same subject with which we are acquainted."—PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Supplementary Volume. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. cloth. 8s. 6d.

This volume contains all that Professor Boole wrote for the purpose of enlarging his treatise on Differential Equations.

THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES. Crown 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d. New Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON.

"An original book by one of the first mathematicians of the age, it is out of all comparison with the mere second-hand compilations which have hitherto been alone accessible to the student."—PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE.

Brook-Smith (J.).—ARITHMETIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By J. BROOK-SMITH, M.A., LL.B., St. John's College, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law; one of the Masters of Cheltenham College. New Edition, revised. Complete, Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. Part I. 3s. 6d.

"A valuable Manual of Arithmetic of the Scientific kind. The best we have seen."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN. "An essentially practical book, providing very definite help to candidates for almost every kind of competitive examination."—BRITISH QUARTERLY.

Cambridge Senate-House Problems and Riders, WITH SOLUTIONS.—

1848-1851.—PROBLEMS. By FERRERS and JACKSON. 8vo. cloth. 15s. 6d.

1848-1851.—RIDERS. By JAMESON. 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d.

1854.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By WALTON and MACENZIE. 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.

1857.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By CAMPION and WALTON. 8vo. cloth. 8s. 6d.

1860.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By WALTON and ROUTE. Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d.

1864.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By WALTON and WILKINSON. 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.

CAMBRIDGE COURSE OF ELEMENTARY

PHILOSOPHY, for the Degree of B.A. Originally
 J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's Coll.
 Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged, and adapted for the Midsize
 Class Examinations by THOMAS LUND, B.D., late Fellow and
 Lecturer of St. John's College, Editor of Wood's Algebra, &c.
 Crown 8vo cloth. 5s

CAMBRIDGE AND DUBLIN MATHEMATICAL JOURNAL

The Complete Work, in Nine Vols. 8vo cloth 7l 4s
*Only a few copies remain on hand. Among the Contributors will
 be found Sir W. Thomson, Stokes, Adams, Boole, Sir W. R. Hamilton,
 De Morgan, Cayley, Sylvester, Jelllett, and other distinguished mathe-
 maticians.*

Candler.—HELP TO ARITHMETIC. Designed for the use of
 Schools. By H. CANDLER, M.A., Mathematical Master of
 Uppingham School. Extra fcap 8vo 2s 6d

Cheyne.—Works by C. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.S.
 AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY
 THEORY. With a Collection of Problems. Second Edition.
 Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

THE EARTH'S MOTION OF ROTATION. Crown 8vo
 3s 6d

Childe.—THE SINGULAR PROPERTIES OF THE ELLIP-
 SOID AND ASSOCIATED SURFACES OF THE N^{TH}
 DEGREE. By the Rev G. F. CHILDE, M.A., Author of
 "Ray Surfaces," "Related Caustics," &c. 8vo 10s 6d

*The object of this volume is to develop peculiarities in the Ellipsoid,
 and, further, to establish analogous properties in the unimisted congen. in
 terms of which this remarkable surface is a constituent*

Christie.—A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-
 QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS,
 with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the
 Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method. By JAMES
 R. CHRISTIE, F.R.S., late First Mathematical Master at the
 Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo cloth. 8s 6d

Cuthbertson.—EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY. By FRANCIS
 CUTHBERTSON, M.A., late Fellow of Corpus Christi College,
 Cambridge, and Head Mathematical Master of the City of
 London School. Extra fcap 8vo 4s 6d

Dalton.—Works by the Rev T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant
 Master of Eton College.

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ARITHMETIC. ON PLAIN
 18mo. cloth 2s 6d *Answers to the Examples a. D. B. 18mo. 4s 6d*

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA. Part school. 4s

- PROPERTIES OF CONIC SECTIONS PROVED ANALYTICALLY PART I THE ELLIPSE** with Problems By the Rev H G DAY M A, Head Master of Sedburgh Grammar School Crown 8vo 3s 6d
- Dodgson** —AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON DETERMINANTS with the Application to Simultaneous Linear Equations and Algebraical Geometry By CHARLES L DODGSON M A Student and Mathematical Lecturer of Christ Church Oxford. Small 4to cloth 10s 6d
"A valuable addition to the treatises we possess on Modern Algebra"
- EDUCATIONAL TIMES
- Drew** —GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS By W H DREW M A St John's College Cambridge Fourth Edition Crown 8vo cloth 4s 6d
- SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS IN DREWS CONIC SECTIONS** Crown 8vo cloth 4s 6d
- Earnshaw (S)** —PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS An Essay towards an entirely New Method of Integrating them. By S EARNSHAW M A St John's College, Cambridge Crown 8vo 5s
- Edgar (J H) and Pritchard (G S)** —NOTE BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY Containing Problems with help for Solutions By J H EDGAR, M A Lecturer on Mechanical Drawing at the Royal School of Mines and G S PRITCHARD late Master for Descriptive Geometry Royal Military Academy Woolwich. Second Edition, Revised and enlarged Globe 8vo 3s
- Ferrers** —AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR COORDINATES the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors By the Rev N M FERRERS, M A, Fellow and Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge Second Edition Crown 8vo 6s 6d
- Frost** —Works by PERCIVAL FROST M A formerly Fellow of St John's College Cambridge, Mathematical Lecturer of King's College
- AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING** By PERCIVAL FROST M A 8vo 12s
- THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA** With Notes and Illustrations Also a collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods By PERCIVAL FROST, M A Second Edition. 8vo cloth. 10s 6d
- Frost and Wolstenholme** —A TREATISE ON SOLID GEOMETRY By PERCIVAL FROST, M A, and the Rev J WOLSTENHOLME, M A, Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Christ's College 8vo cloth 18s

Godfray.—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M

Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge

A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY, for the Use of Colleges¹¹

Schools. New Edition 8vo cloth. 12s 6d.

"A working book taking Astronomy in its proper place in mathematical sciences"

"A book which is not likely to be got up unnoted gently" —GUARDIAN

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY,

with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton.

Second Edition revised Crown 8vo cloth 5s 6d.

"As an elementary treatise and introduction to the subject, we think it may justly claim to supersede all former ones" —LONDON, EDIN AND

DUBLIN PUBL. MAGAZINE.

Hemming—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE

DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS, for the

Use of Colleges and Schools By G W HEMMING, M.A.,

Fellow of St John's College Cambridge Second Edition, with

Corrections and Additions 8vo cloth 9s

"There is no book in common use from which so clear and exact a knowledge of the principles of the Calculus can be so readily obtained" —

LITERARY GAZETTE

Jackson—GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS An Eleme-

tary Treatise in which the Conic Sections are defined as the Plane

Sections of a Cone and treated by the Method of Projection

By J STUART JACKSON, M.A. late Fellow of Gonville and Caius

College, Cambridge 4s 6d

Jellet (John H.)—A TREATISE ON THE THEO-

FRICION By JOHN H JELLET, B.D, Senior Fellow of

Trinity College, Dublin, President of the Royal Irish Academy

8vo 8s 6d

"The work is one of great research, and will add much to the already great reputation of its author" —SCOTSMAN

Jones and Cheyne.—ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES Pro-

gressively arranged By the Rev C A JONES, M.A., and C. H.

CHEYNE, M.A. F.R.A.S., Mathematical Masters of Westminster

School New Edition 18mo cloth. 2s 6d

Kelland and Tait—INTRODUCTION TO QUATER-

NIONS with numerous examples. By P KELLAND, M.A.,

F.R.S. formerly Fellow of Queens College, Cambridge, and

P G TAIT, M.A. formerly Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cam-

bridge, Professors in the department of Mathematics in the

University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 7s 6d.

Kitchener.—A GEOMETRICAL NOTEBOOK, containing

Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study

of Geometry For the Use of Schools By E. R. KITCHENER,

M.A. Mathematical Master at R. by New Edition 4to 2s

COLLECTION OF PROBLEMS AND EXAM-
MATHEMATICS With Answers. By H. A.

MORGAN, M.A., Sadlerian and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus
College, Cambridge Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

Newton's PRINCIPIA. Edited by Professor Sir W. THOMSON
and Professor BLACKBURN 4to cloth 3s 6d

"*Finding*" say the Editors, "that all the editions of the Principia are
now out of print, we have been induced to reprint Newton's last edition
[of 1726] without note or comment, only introducing the 'Corrigenda' of
the old copy and correcting typographical errors." The book is of a
handsome size with large type fine thick paper and cleanly cut figures,
and is the only modern edition containing the whole of Newton's great work
"Undoubtedly the finest edition of the text of the Principia which has
yet appeared."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

Parkinson.—Works by S. PARKINSON D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and
Professor of St. John's College, Cambridge

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS. For the
Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes
in Schools With a Collection of Examples. Fifth edition, revised,
Crown 8vo cloth. 9s 6d

A TREATISE ON OPTICS. Third Edition, revised and enlarged,
Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d

Phear.—**ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS** With Numerous
Examples By J. B. PHEAR, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant
Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge Fourth Edition, Crown
8vo cloth. 5s 6d

Pratt.—**A TREATISE ON ATTRACTIONS, LAPLACE'S
FUNCTIONS, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH.**
By JOHN H. PRATT, M.A., Archdeacon of Calcutta, Author of
"The Mathematical Principles of Mechanical Philosophy" Fourth
Edition, Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

Puckle.—**AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SEC-
TIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY** With Numerous
Examples and Hints for their Solution, especially designed for the
Use of Beginners. By G. H. PUCKLE, M.A. New Edition,
revised and enlarged Crown 8vo. cloth 7s 6d

"*Describes an intimate acquaintance with the difficulties likely to be
felt, together with a singular aptitude in removing them*"—**ATHENÆUM**

Rawlinson.—**ELEMENTARY STATICS,** by the REV. GEORGE
RAWLINSON, M.A. Edited by the REV. EDWARD STURGES, M.A.,
of Emmanuel College, Cambridge, and late Professor of the Applied
Sciences, Elphinstone College, Bombay, Crown 8vo cloth 4s 6d.
Published under the authority of Her Majesty's Secretary of State for
India, for use in the Government Schools and Colleges in India.

Reynolds.—**MODERN METHOD IN ELEMENTARY
GEOMETRY** By E. M. REYNOLDS, M.A., Mathematical
Master in Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 2s 6d

Routh.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE OF**MICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES**

Numerous Examples By EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, M.A.

Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St Peter's College, Cambridge.

Examiner in the University of London. Second Edition, enlarged,
Crown 8vo cloth 14s**WORKS****By the REV BARNARD SMITH, M.A.,**Rector of Glaston Rutland late Fellow and Senior Bursar
of St Peter's College Cambridge**ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA** in their Principles and
cation with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken
from the Cambridge Examination Papers with especial reference
to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree Twelfth
Edition carefully revised Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d*"To all those whose minds are sufficiently developed to comprehend the
simplest mathematical reasoning and who have not yet thoroughly
mastered the principles of Arithmetic and Algebra it is calculated to
be of great advantage —ATHENÆUM Mr Smith's work is a most
useful publication The rules are stated with great clearness The
examples are well selected and worked out with just sufficient detail,
without being encumbered by too minute explanations and there prevails
throughout it that just proportion of theory and practice which is the
marking excellence of an elementary work —DEAN PRACOCK***ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS** New Edition Crown 8vo cloth 4s 6d
Adapted from the Author's work on Arithmetic and Algebra*"Admirably adapted for instruction combining just sufficient theory
with a large and well selected collection of exercises for practice"—
JOURNAL OF EDUCATION***A KEY TO THE ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS** Tenth
Edition Crown 8vo cloth 8s 6d**EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC** With Answers Crown 8vo.
hemp cloth. 2s 6d

Or sold separately, Part I 1s, Part II 1s, Answers, 6d.

SCHOOL CLASS BOOK OF ARITHMETIC 18mo cloth. 3s.

Or sold separately, Parts I and II 10s each Part III 1s

KEYS TO SCHOOL CLASS BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. Complete in one volume, 18mo cloth, 6s 6d, or Parts I, II, & III, 2s 6d each.**SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR NATIONAL AND
ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS** 18mo cloth. Or separately,
Part I 2d, Part II 3d, Part III 7d Answers, 6d**THE SAME, with Answers complete,** 18mo cloth 1s 6d

ith—continued

...LING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC 18mo cloth.

6d
EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC 18mo cloth

1s 6d The same with Answers 18mo 1s 9d
KEY TO EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC

18mo cloth 4s 6d
THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, ITS PRINCIPLES
AND APPLICATION with numerous Examples written
expressly for Standard V in National Schools. Fourth Edition
18mo cloth sewed 3d

CHART OF THE METRIC SYSTEM on a Sheet size 42 in
by 34 in on Roller mounted and varnished price 3s 6d Fourth
ed. 10s

"We do not remember that ever we have seen teaching by a chart more
happily carried out —SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE

Also a Small Chart on a Card *price 1d
EASY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC combining Exercises in
Reading Writing Spelling, and Dictation Part I for Standard
I in National Schools Crown 8vo 9d
Diagrams for School room walls in preparation

"We should strongly advise everyone to study carefully Mr Barnes's
Smith's Lessons in Arithmetic, Writing and Spelling. A more excel-
lent little work for a first introduction to knowledge cannot well be
written. Mr Smith's larger Text books on Arithmetic and Algebra are
already most favourably known and he has proved now that the difficulty
of writing a text book which begins ab ovo is really surmountable but we
are much mistaken if this little book has not cost its author more
trouble and mental labour than any of his more elaborate text-books.
The plan to combine arithmetical lessons with those in reading and spelling
is perfectly good and it is worked out in accordance with the aims of our
National Schools and we are convinced that its general introduction in
all elementary schools throughout the country will produce great educa-
tional advantages —WESTMINSTER REVIEW

THE METRIC ARITHMETIC [Nearly ready

Snowball —THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERI-
CAL TRIGONOMETRY, with the Construction and Use of
Tables of Logarithms By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. Tenth Edition
Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s 6d.

Tait and Steele —A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF A
PARTICLE With numerous Examples By Professor TAIT and
Mr STEELE. New Edition enlarged Crown 8vo cloth, 10s 6d

TRAY —ELEMENTARY MENSURATION FOR SCHOOLS
With numerous Examples. By SEPTIMIUS TRAY, B.A., Head
Master of Queen Elizabeth's Grammar School, Rivington Extra
Imp. 8vo 3s 6d

"A very compact useful manual. —SPECIATOR.

WORKS

By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S.,

Of St. John's College, Cambridge

"Mr Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text books which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other. — SATURDAY REVIEW

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 18mo cloth. 3s 6d.

MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo cloth. 2s 6d.

"For simplicity and clearness of arrangement it is unsurpassed by any text book on the subject which has come under our notice. — EDUCATIONAL TIMES

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo cloth. 2s 6d.

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS Crown 8vo cloth. 6s 6d.

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo cloth. 2s 6d.

KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS Crown 8vo. 8s 6d.

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo cloth. 4s 6d.

ALGEBRA For the Use of Colleges and Schools Sixth Edition, containing two New Chapters and Three Hundred miscellaneous Examples. Crown 8vo cloth. 7s 6d.

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS Crown 8vo. 10s 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s 6d.

"A thoroughly trustworthy complete, and yet not too elaborate treatise." PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE.

PLANE TRIGONOMETRY For Schools and Colleges. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo cloth. 5s.

A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 4s 6d.

"For educational purposes this work seems to be superior to any on the subject. — CRITIC.

PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY, as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections. With numerous Examples. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s 6d.

A.)—continued

NOTES ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS With numerous Examples. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d
Has already taken its place as the text book on that subject —
PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE.

A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS APPLICATIONS With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d

EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE DIMENSIONS Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo cloth 4s

A TREATISE ON ANALYTICAL STATICS With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PROBABILITY from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace 8vo 18s

RESEARCHES IN THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS, principally on the Theory of Discontinuous Solutions an Essay to which the Adams Prize was awarded in the University of Cambridge in 1871. 8vo 6s

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF ATTRACTION AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH, from the time of Newton to that of Laplace 2 vols 8vo 34s

"Such histories are at present more valuable than original work. They at once enable the Mathematician to make himself master of all that is done on the subject and also give him a clue to the right method of dealing with the subject in future by showing him the paths by which advances have been made in the past. It is with unmingled satisfaction that we see this branch adopted as his special subject by one whose cast of mind and self culture have made him one of the most accurate as he certainly is the most learned of Cambridge Mathematicians."—SATURDAY REVIEW

Wilson (J. M.)—ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY Books I. II. III. Containing the Subjects of Euclid's first Four Books. New Edition, following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Association. By J. M. Wilson, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Mathematical Master of Rugby School. Extra fcap 8vo 3s 6d

SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS With Appendix on Transcendentals and Harmonic Division. For the use of Teachers. By J. M. Wilson, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap 8vo 3s 6d

Wilson (W. F.)—A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS By W. F. Wilson, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College
9s 6d

"*This treatise supplies a great educational need*"
TIMES.

Wolstenholme.—A BOOK OF MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS on Subjects included in the Course
By JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME, Fellow of Christ Church
Fellow of St John's College, and lately Lecturer in
Mathematics at Christ's College. Crown 8vo cloth.

"*Judicious, symmetrical, and well arranged*"—GU

SCIENCE.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS.

It is the intention of the Publishers to produce a complete series of Scientific Manuals, affording full and accurate elementary information, conveyed in clear and lucid English. The authors are well known as among the foremost men of their several departments, and their names form a ready guarantee for the high character of the books. Subjoined is a list of those Manuals that have already appeared, with a short account of each. Others are in active preparation, and the whole will constitute a standard series specially adapted to the requirements of teachers, whether for private study or for school instruction.

ASTRONOMY, by the Astronomer Royal.

POPULAR ASTRONOMY With Illustrations By SIR G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal. New Edition. 1880
cloth. 4s. 6d.

Six lectures intended to explain to intelligent persons the principles on which the instruments of an Observatory are constructed, and the principles on which the observations made with these instruments are treated for deduction of the distances and weights of the bodies of the Solar System.

ASTRONOMY.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY With Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, Nebulae and numerous Illustrations. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. New Edition 1880 5s 6d.

Full, clear, sound, and worthy of attention, not only as a popular exposition, but as a scientific treatise. —ATHENÆUM. *The most valuable elementary book on the subject.* —NONCONFORMIST.

Class-Books—continued

QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS
IN ASTRONOMY For the Use of Schools By JOHN FORBES
ROBERTSON 18mo cloth, limp 1s 6d

PHYSIOLOGY

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY With
numerous Illustrations By T H HUXLEY F R S Professor
of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines. New Edition.
18mo cloth 4s 6d

"*Pure gold throughout*"—GUARDIAN *Unquestionably the clearest
and most complete elementary treatise on this subject that we possess in
any language*—WESTMINSTER REVIEW

JOHN HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS
By T ALCOCK M D 18mo 1s 6d

BOTANY

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY By D OLIVER,
F R S F L S Professor of Botany in University College London
With nearly Two Hundred Illustrations. New Edition 18mo
cloth 4s 6d

CHEMISTRY

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY INORGANIC
AND ORGANIC By HENRY E ROSCOE, F R S Professor of
Chemistry in Owens College Manchester With numerous Illus-
trations and Chromo Litho of the Solar Spectrum and of the Al-
kalies and Alkaline Earths New Edition 18mo cloth 4s 6d

"*A standard general text book it deserves to take a leading place*"—
"ATOR" *We unhesitatingly pronounce it the best of all our
elementary treatises on Chemistry*—MEDICAL TIMES

POLITICAL ECONOMY

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS By MILICENT
G FAWCETT New Edition 18mo 2s 6d

"*Clear compact and comprehensive*"—DAILY NEWS "*The relations
of capital and labour have never been more simply or more clearly
explained*"—CONTEMPORARY REVIEW

LOGIC.

LESSONS IN LOGIC Deductive and Induc-
tive with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of
Logical Terms By W STANLEY JEVONS, M A, Professor of Logic
in Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. 18mo. 3s 6d.

"*Nothing can be better for a school-book*"—GUARDIAN.

"*A manual at the same time interesting and scientific*"—ATHENÆUM

PHYSICS.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS By BALFOUR
STEWART, F R S, Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens
College Manchester W 4s 6d

Elementary Class-Books—continued

liths of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulae. 18mo 4s 6d

"The best ideal of a scientific text-book, clear, accurate, and thorough."

EDUCATIONAL TIMES**PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.**

THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY By FRANCIS JONES, Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester. With Preface by Professor ROSECOE. With Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo 2s. 6d.

ANATOMY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY By Dr. FRANK MERRITT F.R.S. Lectr in Comparative Anatomy at St. George's Hospital. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. 18mo 6s 6d.

"It may be questioned whether any other work on Anatomy contains so large a mass of information."

"The work is excellent and should be in the hands of every student of human anatomy."—MEDICAL TIMES

STEAM—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE By JOHN EMMETT, Bachelor of Engineering, Whitworth Scholar etc late Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College. With numerous Woodcuts and Numerical Examples and Exercises. 18mo 4s 6d.

MANUALS FOR STUDENTS.

Flower (W. H.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTEOLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA Being the substance of the Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons in England in 1870. By W. H. FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Hulsean Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Physiology. With numerous Illustrations. Globe 8vo 7s 6d.

Hooker (Dr.)—THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS By J. D. HOOKER, C.B., F.R.S., M.D. D.C.L., President of the Royal Society. 18mo 8vo 10s 6d.

"Cannot fail to perfectly fulfil the purpose for which it is adapted."—LAND AND WATER.—"Containing the fullest and most complete manual of the kind that has yet appeared."—FIELD MARK.

Oliver (Professor).—FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY. By DANIEL OLIVER F.R.S., F.L.S., Keeper of the Herbarium and Library of the Royal Gardens, Kew, and Professor of Botany in University College, London. With numerous Illustrations. Extra fcap 8vo. 6s 6d.

"It contains a well-digested summary of all essential knowledge relating to Indian botany, arranged in an accessible and systematic form of scientific nomenclature."—LITERARY GAZETTE.

Other vols. of the *Mammals* will follow.

NATURE SERIES.

THE SPECTROSCOPE AND ITS APPLICATIONS By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With Coloured Plates and numerous illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S. With numerous illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"We can most cordially recommend it to young naturalists."—*ATHLETIC*

THE BIRTH OF CHEMISTRY By G. F. ROSEWELL, F.R.S., F.C.S., Science Master in Marlborough College. With numerous illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"We can cordially recommend it to all Students of Chemistry."—*CHEMICAL NEWS*

THE TRANSIT OF VENUS By G. FORBES, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Other volumes to follow

BALL (R. S., A.M.)—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS
A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland. By R. S. BALL, A.M., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics in the Royal College of Science, Dublin. Royal 8vo. 16s.

THE CHILDHOOD OF THE WORLD a Simple Account of Man in Early Times. By EDWARD CLODD, F.R.S. &c. Third Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. Also a Special Edition for Schools. 18mo. 1s.

PROFESSOR MAX MÜLLER, in a letter to the Author, says "I read your book with great pleasure. I have no doubt it will do good, and I hope you will continue your work. Nothing spoils our temper so much as having to unlearn in youth, manhood, and even old age, so many things which we were taught as children. A book like yours will prepare a fair, sober, well-informed mind, and I was delighted to have it to read to my children."

FOSTER (Josiah P., Jun.)—FIRST PRINCIPLES OF CHEMICAL PHILOSOPHY By JOSIAH P. FOSTER, Jun., former Professor of Chemistry and Mineralogy in Harvard College. Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. Crown 8vo. 42s.

FOSTER (J. P.)—A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS for use in Colleges and Schools. Adapted for the instruction of Students for the Government Science and Commerce Examinations. With a Preface by Professor ROBERT B. FOSTER. cloth 7s. 6d.

SCIENCE PRIMERS FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS

The necessity of commencing the teaching of Science in Schools at an early stage of the pupil's course has now become generally recognized and is enforced in all Schools under Government inspection. For the purpose of facilitating the introduction of Science Teaching into Elementary Schools Messrs Macmillan are now publishing a New Series of Science Primers under the joint Editorship of Professors HUXLEY, ROSCOE, and BALFOUR STEWART. The object of these Primers is to convey information in such a manner as to make it both intelligible and interesting to pupils in the most elementary classes. They are clearly printed on good paper and illustrations are given whenever they are necessary to the proper understanding of the text. The following are just published. —

PRIMER OF CHEMISTRY By H. E. ROSCOE, Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester. 18mo. 1s. Third Edition.

PRIMER OF PHYSICS By BALFOUR STEWART, Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. 18mo. 1s. Third Edition.

PRIMER OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY By ARTHUR GEIKIE, F.R.S. Marchmont Professor of Geography and Mineralogy at Edinburgh. Second Edition. 18mo. 1s.

Everyone ought to know something about the air we breathe, the earth we live upon, and about the relations between them, and it is left a work the author wishes to show what sort of questions may be put about some of the chief parts of the book of nature, and especially about two of them—the Air and the Earth. The divisions of the book are as follows—The Shape of the Earth—Day and Night—The Air—The Circulation of Water on the Land—The Sea—The Inside of the Earth.

PRIMER OF GEOLOGY By PROFESSOR GEIKIE, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

In these Primers the authors have aimed not so much to give information, how as to enlighten to discipline the mind in a way which has not hitherto been customary, by bringing it into "unconscious contact with Nature herself." For this purpose a series of simple experiments (to be performed by the teacher) has been devised leading up to the chief truths of each Science. Thus the power of observation on the part of the pupil is immediately strengthened. Each Manual is copiously illustrated, and appendices are lists of all the necessary apparatus, with prices, and directions as to how they may be obtained. Professor Huxley's introduction to every volume has been delayed through the illness of the author, but it is now expected to appear very shortly. They are wonderfully clear and lucid in their construction, simple in style, and admirable in plan.

ners—continued

PRIMER OF PHYSIOLOGY By MICHAEL FOSTER, M D,
F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations 18mo

In preparation —

INTRODUCTORY By PROFESSOR HUXLEY

PRIMER OF BOTANY By DR HOOKER, C.B., F.R.S

PRIMER OF ASTRONOMY By J NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S

&c &c

MISCELLANEOUS.

SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR An Attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev E A. ABBOTT M.A., Head Master of the City of London School For the Use of Schools New and Enlarged Edition Extra fcap 8vo 6s

"A critical inquiry conducted with great skill and knowledge, and with all the appliances of modern philology. We venture to believe that those who consider themselves most proficient as Shakespearians will find something to learn from its pages —PALL MALL GAZETTE.

"Valuable not only as an aid to the critical study of Shakespeare but as tending to familiarise the reader with Elizabethan English in general" —ATHENÆUM

BARKER.—FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF COOKING By LADY BARKER 18mo 1s

"A unpretending but invaluable little work. The plan is a simple one in its completeness and simplicity it is hardly possible that one, who can read at all can fail to understand the practical lessons on bread and beef, fish and vegetables while the explanation of the chemical composition of our food must be intelligible to all who possess sufficient education to follow the argument in which the finest possible technical terms are used" —SPECTATOR

BARNES.—FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH By J BARNES 18mo 1s Third Edition

BESANT.—STUDIES IN EARLY FRENCH POETRY By WALTER BESANT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8s 6d.

"In one moderately sized volume he has contrived to introduce us to the very best, if not to all of the early French poets —ATHENÆUM "In clarity, the thought of a scholar, and a genuine enthusiasm for his subject, together, he makes it of very considerable value —SPECTATOR

BYRON.—A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES By HERMANN BYRON, Ph.D. Lecturer on French Language and Literature at Owens College, Manchester Extra fcap 8vo. 4s 6d

"We discuss the work with every expression of satisfaction. It can

study of French a means towards the higher culture. *THE TIMES* "A good sound valuable philological grammar. The author presents the subject by his method and by detail with an enormous amount of information about French not usually to be found in grammars, and the information is all of it of real practical value to the student who really wants to know French well and to understand it spirit. At the end a long chapter called *Readings and Illustrations* forms an exceedingly interesting and valuable dissertation upon French Philology." —SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE

Calderwood —HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

By the Rev HENRY CALDERWOOD LL.D. Professor of Moral

Philosophy University of Edinburgh Second Edition. 8vo 6s

A compact and useful work will be an assistance to many students outside the author's own University. —GUARDIAN

Delamotte —A BEGINNER'S DRAWING BOOK. By P. H.

DELAMOTTE, F.S.A. Progress very arranged New Edition, improved. Crown 8vo 4s 6d

We have seen and examined a great many drawing books, but the one now before us strikes us as being the best of them all. —ILLUSTRATED *THE TIMES*. "A concise simple and thoroughly practical work. The illustrations are throughout well adapted to the point." —GUARDIAN.

Goldsmith —THE TRAVELLER or a Prospect of Society and THE DESERTED VILLAGE. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

With Notes Philological and Explanatory by J. W. HALICZKY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6d

Green —A HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE. 1, 2, 3c

Rev. J. R. GREEN, M.A. For the use of Colleges and Schools. Crown 8vo

Haliczyk —LONGER ENGLISH POEMS with Notes Philological and Explanatory and an Introduction on the Teaching of English.

Chiefly for use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALICZKY, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge, Lecturer in English Literature and Chaucerian Composition at King's College School, London, and Editor, *Edinburgh*. 8vo 4s 6d

Helfenstein (James) —A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE TEUTONIC LANGUAGES. Being at the same time a Historical Grammar of the English Language and comprising Gothic, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Modern English, Low German (Old Norse), Danish, Swedish, Old High German, Middle High German, Modern German, Old Saxon, Old Frisian, and Dutch.

By JAMES HELFENSTEIN, Ph.D. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

Holt —A GENEALOGICAL STEMM OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND AND FRANCE. By the Rev C. Holt. On

A. 5s. 6d.

SHAKESPEARE'S "TEMPEST" With Glossarial
Explanatory Notes, By the Rev J M JEPHSON Second
Edition, 1880 1s

**Kington-Oliphant — THE SOURCES OF STANDARD
ENGLISH** By J KINGTON OLIPHANT Extra fcap 8vo 6s
*Mr Oliphant's book is to our mind, one of the ablest and most
valuable contributions to our standard English we have seen for many
years. The arrangement of the work and its indices make it in-
valuable as a work of reference and easyable to study and to store when
needed in the memory. — SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE Comes
closer to a history of the English language than anything that we have
yet seen, and a history could be written without confusion and con-
flict.* — SATURDAY REVIEW

MARTIN — THE POET'S HOUR Poetry Selected and Arranged
for Children By FRANCES MARTIN Second Edition 1880
6s

Nearly 200 Poems selected from the best Poets ancient and modern,
and arranged mainly for children between the ages of eight and twelve

SPRING TIME WITH THE POETS Poetry selected by FRANCES
MARTIN Second Edition 1880 3s 6d

Intended mainly for girls and boys between the ages of twelve and seven

**Masson (Gustave) — A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY
OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE** (French English and English
French) Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Deriva-
tives and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables By
GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant-Master and Librarian Harrow
School. Square half bound, 6s

This compendium, though cast in the same form as other dictionaries has
several distinctive features which increase its value for the student. In the
French English part, etymologies founded on the researches of Meyer
Litté, Scheller, and Brachet are given. The list of diverging deriva-
tives at the end of the volume will be very useful to those who are
interested in tracing the various developments of original Latin words.
But that which makes it almost indispensable to students of the political
and literary history of France, is to be found at the beginning of the work
where Mr Masson has drawn up clear and complete tables of historical
events, viewed in connection with the developments of literature and lan-
guage, between the death of Charlemagne 814 A.D. and that of Louis
Philippe 1830. These tables are illustrated by remarks on the various
epochs, in which the words printed were the expression. Appended
to a list of the principal Chronicles and Memoirs on the History of
France which have appeared up to the present time, the Spanish Re-
publican Calendar, corresponding with the Gregorian and a Chronological
list of the principal French Newspapers published during the Revolution

- MORRIS**—Works by the Rev R MORRIS, LL.B.
English Language and Literature in King's College School. 2s 6d
- HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE**, comprising Charters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word formation. Third Edition Extra fcap 8vo 6s
'It makes an era in the study of the English tongue' —SATURDAY REVIEW 'He has done his work with a fulness and completeness that leave nothing to be desired' —NONCONFORMIST 'A genuine and sound book' —ATHENÆUM
- ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR**, Containing Accidence and Word formation. 18mo 2s 6d
- Oppen**—**FRENCH READER** For the Use of Colleges and Schools. Containing a graduated Selection from modern Authors in Prose and Verse, and copious Notes, chiefly Etymological. By EDWARD A OPPEN Fcap. 8vo cloth 4s 6d
- Pyldet**—**NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION** containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words and Phrases, with German and English Sentences in both Languages, and a List of the most useful Words in German and English. 18mo 2s 6d
- Sonnenschein and Meiklejohn.**—**THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ.** By A SONNENSCHIN and J M D MEIKLEJOHN, M.A. Fcap 8vo
COMPRISING
THE NURSERY BOOK, containing all the Two Letter Words in the Language 1d (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls 5s)
THE FIRST COURSE, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants 3d
THE SECOND COURSE, with Combinations and Bridges, consisting of short Vowels with Double Consonants. 4d
THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language 6d
"These are admirable books because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read English" —SPECTATOR
- Taylor.**—**WORDS AND PLACES**, or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev ISAAC TAYLOR M.A. Third and cheaper Edition, revised and compressed With Maps Globe 8vo 6s
Already been adopted by many teachers and prescribed as a text book by the Board of Education

- Works by EDWARD THRING, M A, Head Master of
 Appingham
- THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH,
 with Questions Fourth Edition 18mo 2s
- THE CHILD'S GRAMMAR Being the Substance of "The
 Elements of Grammar taught in English," adapted for the Use of
 Junior Classes A New Edition. 18mo 1s
- SCHOOL SONGS A Collection of Songs for Schools With the
 Music arranged for four Voices Edited by the Rev E THRING
 and H RICCIUS Folio 7s 6d
- Trench (Archbishop) —HOUSEHOLD BOOK OF FINE
 ENGLISH POETRY Selected and Arranged with Notes, by
 the C TRENCH D D, Archbishop of Dublin Extra fcap 8vo
 5s 6d Second Edition
- "The Archbishop has conferred in this delightful volume an impor-
 tant gift on the whole English speaking population of the world —PALL
 MALL GAZETTE"
- ON THE STUDY OF WORDS Lectures addressed (originally)
 to the Pupils at the Diocesan Training School, Winchester
 Fourteenth Edition revised Fcap 8vo 4s 6d
- ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT Fifth Edition, revised
 and improved Fcap 8vo 4s 6d
- A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS used formerly
 in Senses Different from their Present Fourth Edition, enlarged
 Fcap 8vo 4s 6d
- ghan (C M) —A SHILLING BOOK OF WORDS
 FROM THE POETS By C M VAUGHAN 18mo cloth
- Whitney —Works by WILLIAM D WHITNEY Professor of San-
 scrit and Sanskrit in Yale University
- A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR Crown 8vo 6s
- A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE, with Notes and
 Vocabulary Crown 8vo 7s 6d
- Yonge (Charlotte M.) —THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF
 GOLDEN DEEDS A Reading Book for Schools and General
 Readers By the Author of "The Hives of Redclyffe." 18mo
 cloth 1s

HISTORY.

- Freeman (Edward A) —OLD ENGLISH HISTORY
 By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, DCL, late Fellow of Trinity
 College, Oxford With Four Coloured Maps Third Edition

"I have, I hope," the author says, "shown that it is possible to distinguish true history from legend and from whimsical invention, and also to understand the nature of historical authorities and to weigh one statement against another. I have throughout striven to connect the history of England with the general history of civilised Europe, and I have especially tried to make the book serve as an incentive to a more accurate study of historical geography." In the present edition the whole has been carefully revised, and such improvements as suggested themselves have been introduced. "The book indeed is full of instruction and interest to students of all ages, and he must be a well-informed man indeed who will not rise from its perusal with clearer and more accurate ideas of a too much neglected portion of English History." —SPECTATOR.

Historical Course for Schools — Edited by EDWARD

A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

The object of the present series is to put forth clear and correct views of history in simple language and in the smallest space and cheapest form in which it could be done. It is meant in the first place for Schools, but it is often found that a book for schools proves useful for other readers as well, and it is hoped that this may be the case with the little books the first instalment of which is now given to the world. The General Sketch will be followed by a series of special histories of particular countries which will take for granted the main principles laid down in the General Sketch. In every case the results of the latest historical research will be given in as simple a form as may be, and the several numbers of the series will all be so far under the supervision of the Editor as to secure general accuracy of statement and a general harmony of plan and sentiment, but each book will be the original work of its author, who will be responsible for his own treatment of smaller details.

The first volume is meant to be introductory to the whole series. It is intended to give, as its name implies, a general sketch of the history of the civilised world, that is, of Europe, and of the lands which have drawn their civilisation from Europe. Its object is to trace out the general relations of different periods and different countries to one another, without going minutely into the affairs of any particular country. This is an object of the first importance, for without clear notions of general history, the history of particular countries can never be rightly understood. The narrative extends from the earliest movements of the Aryan people, down to the latest events both on the Eastern and Western Continents. The book consists of seventeen moderately sized chapters, each chapter being divided into a number of short numbered paragraphs, each with a title prefixed clearly indicative of the subject of the paragraph.

I. GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. By

EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. Third Edition. 18mo. cloth.

3s. 6d.

"It supplies the great want of a good foundation for historical teaching."

III. Course for Schools—continued.

is used in a way that promises much for the volumes that are yet to appear"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

II. HISTORY OF ENGLAND By EDITH THOMPSON. Fourth Edition 18mo 2s 6d

"Freedom from prejudice, simplicity of style, and accuracy of statement, are the characteristics of this little volume. It is a trustworthy text book and likely to be generally serviceable in schools"—PALL MALL GAZETTE

"Upon the whole, this manual is the best sketch of English history for the use of young people we have yet met with"—ATHENÆUM

III. HISTORY OF SCOTLAND By MARGARET MACARTHUR 18mo, 2s

An excellent summary, unimpeachable as to facts, and putting them in the fairest and most impartial light attainable —GUARDIAN "Miss MacArthur has performed her task with admirable care, clearness, and fulness, and we have now for the first time a really good School History of Scotland"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

IV. HISTORY OF ITALY By the Rev W HUNT, M A 18mo 3s

"It possesses the same solid merit as its predecessors the same scrupulous care about fidelity in details. It is distinguished too, by information on art, architecture, and social politics, in which the writer's grasp is seen by the firmness and clearness of his touch"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

V. HISTORY OF GERMANY By J SIMS, M A 18mo 3s

"A remarkably clear and impressive History of Germany. Its great events are wisely kept as central figures, and the smaller events are carefully set, not only subordinate and subservient, but most skilfully woven into the texture of the historical tapestry presented to the eye"—STANDARD

The following will shortly be issued—

FRANCE. By the Rev J R GREEN, M A

GREECE By J ANVAN BRYCE, B A

AMERICA By JOHN A DOYLE

Yonge (Charlotte M.)—A PARALLEL HISTORY OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND consisting of Outlines and Dates

By CHARLOTTE M YONGE, Author of "The Hour of Redclyffe,"

"Cameos of English History," &c &c Oblong 4to 3s 6d

"We can imagine few more really advantageous courses of historical study for a young mind than going carefully and steadily through Miss Yonge's excellent little book."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

MEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY From Rollo to Edward

1. By the Author of "The Hour of Redclyffe." Extra fcap

8vo. Second Edition, enlarged. 3s 6d

A book for young people just beyond the elementary histories of England, and able to enter in some degree into the real spirit of events, and to be

Yonge (Charlotte M.)—continued

ry details, we have living pictures, faithful, vivid, and striking.
NONCONFORMIST

**A SECOND SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY,
THE WARS IN FRANCE** Second Edition Extra fcap 8vo 5s

"Though mainly intended for young readers they will, if we mistake not be found very acceptable to those of more mature years, and the life and reality imparted to the dry bones of history cannot fail to be attractive to readers of every age —JOHN BULL

EUROPEAN HISTORY Narrated in a Series of Historical Selections from the Best Authorities Edited and arranged by E. M. SAWFILL and C. M. YONGE. First Series 1003—1154. The Edition Crown 8vo 6s Second Series 1088—1228 Crown 8vo 6s Second Edition

"We know of scarcely anything which is so likely to raise to a higher level the average standard of English education —GUARDIAN

DIVINITY.

* For other Works by these Authors see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE

Abbott (Rev. E. A.)—BIBLE LESSONS By the Rev E. A. ABBOTT M.A., Head Master of the City of London School. Second Edition Crown 8vo 4s 6d

"Wise, suggestive and really profound initiation into religious thought" —GUARDIAN
"I think nobody could read them without being both the better for them himself and being also able to see how this difficult duty of imparting a sound religious education may be effected —BISHOP OF LONDON
DAVID S. AT ABERGWILLY

Arnold — A BIBLE READING FOR SCHOOLS The GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION (Isaiah, Chapters 40—66) Arranged and Edited for Young Learners By MATTHEW ARNOLD D.C.L., formerly Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel Third Edition 18mo cloth 1s

"There can be no doubt that it will be found excellently calculated for further instruction in Biblical literature in any school into which it may be introduced and we can safely say that at whatever school uses the book it will enable its pupils to understand Isaiah a great advantage compared with other establishments which do not avail themselves of it —TIMES
"Mr Arnold has done the greatest possible service to the public. We never read any translation of Isaiah which interfered so little with the musical rhythm and associations of our English Bible translation while doing so much to display the missing links in the connection of the text —SPECTATOR

Golden Treasury Psalter. Students' Edition Being an Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically Arranged, by FOUR

—A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.

Jude Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps constructed for this work by A. KEITH JOHNSTON. Third Edition. 7v. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

In this edition Professor Stubbs has carefully revised both text and making such corrections of facts, dates, and the like as the results of recent research warrant. The doctrinal, historical, and generally relative views of the late author have been preserved intact. "As a manual for the student of ecclesiastical history, in the Middle Ages, we know of no English work which can be compared to Mr. Stubbs's." (GUARDIAN)

—HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE REFORMATION.

By ARCHDEACON HARDWICK. Third Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

—MACLEAR.—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Head Master of King's College School.

—CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. Eighth Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo cloth 4s. 6d.

A careful and elaborate though brief compendium of all that modern research has done for the illustration of the Old Testament. We know of no work which contains so much important information in so small a compass.—BRITISH QUARTERLY REVIEW

—CLASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, including the Connexion of the Old and New Testament. With Four Maps. Fifth Edition. 18mo cloth. 5s. 6d.

Especially clear and orderly arrangement of the Sacred Story. The work is solidly and completely done.—ATHLETIC

—SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

—SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

These works have been carefully abridged from the author's larger

—BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. Third and Cleverly Edited. 18mo. cloth 1s. 6d.

is indeed the work of a scholar and divine, and as such, though so simple, it is also extremely instructive. There are few clergymen who would not find it useful in preparing candidates for Confirmation, and there are not a few who would find it useful to themselves.—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

—ST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND, with Scripture Proofs. 1s. 6d.

Maclear—*continued.*

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATION AND FIRST COMMUNION. With Prayers and Devotions. 32mo. cloth extra, red edges. 2s.

"It is earnest, orthodox, and affectionate in tone. The form of examination is particularly good." **JOHN BULL**

Maurice.—**THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED, THE COMMANDMENTS.** A Manual for Parents and Ministers. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures. By Rev. F. DEYERSON MAURICE, M.A., Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Cambridge. 18mo cloth limp. 1s. 6d.

Procter.—**A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER,** with a Rationale of its Offices. By FRANK PROCTER, M.A. Eleventh Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"We admire the author's diligence, and bear willing testimony to the extent and accuracy of his research. The origin of every part of Prayer Book has been diligently investigated, and there are few points of fact connected with it which are not either ingeniously explained, or referred to that persons interested may work out the truth for themselves."—**ATHENÆUM.**

Procter and Maclear.—**AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.** Re-arranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the Morning and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. F. Procter and the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR. New Edition. 18mo. 2s.

Psalms of David Chronologically Arranged.

Four Friends. An Amended Version, with Historical Introduction and Explanatory Notes. Second and Cheap Edition, with Additions and Corrections. Crown 8vo. 8s.

"One of the most instructive and valuable books that has been published for many years."—**SPECTATOR.**

Ramsay.—**THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL;** or, the Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the use of Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. Second Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

A clear explanation of the Catechism, by way of Question and Answer. "This is by far the best Manual on the Catechism we have met."—**ENGLISH JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.**

Simpson.—**AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.** By WILLIAM SIMPSON. Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Swainson.—**A HANDBOOK OF BUTLER'S ANALOGY.** Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

